МИНИСТЕРСТВО ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ Минский государственный лингвистический университет

О.В. Аношина

ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА: ИНТЕНСИВНЫЙ КУРС ПОДГОТОВКИ К ЭКЗАМЕНУ

Минск МГЛУ 2023 УДК 811.111'36(075.8) ББК 81.432.1-923.132 A69

Рекомендовано Редакционным советом Минского государственного лингвистического университета. Протокол № 4(65) от 14.10.2022 г.

Рецензенты: кандидат филологических наук H. C. Cы- чева (МГЛУ); кандидат филологических наук, доцент A. K. Шев- цова (МГУ имени A. A. Кулешова)

Аношина, О. В.

А69 Практическая грамматика английского языка: пособие для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-21 06 01-02 «Современные иностранные языки (перевод)» / О. В. Аношина. - Минск: МГЛУ, 2023. - 156 с.

ISBN 978-985-28-0204-8

Пособие предназначенно для развития и совершенствования грамматических навыков у будущих переводчиков и состоит из четырех разделов («Изъявительное наклонение», «Сослагательное наклонение», «Модальные глаголы», «Артикли»). В разделах представлена информация теоретического характера и задания практического характера. Пособие разработано в соответствии с программой дисциплины «Практическая грамматика» для специальностей 1-21 06 01 «Современные иностранные языки (по направлениям)» и 6-05-0231-02 «Переводческое дело».

Адресуется студентам, обучающимся по специальности переводческого профиля.

УДК 811.111'36 (075.8) ББК 81.432.1-923.132



Электронная версия учебного издания доступна в электронной библиотеке МГЛУ по ссылке **e-lib.mslu.by** или по QR-коду

ISBN 978-985-28-0204-8

© Аношина О. В., 2023

© УО «Минский государственный лингвистический университет», 2023

ОГЛАВЛЕНИЕ

введение	5
GRAMMAR GUIDE	6
The Indicative Mood	
The Oblique Moods	
The Modal Verbs	
The Articles	
THE ALUCKES	
ULTIMATE REVISION	
TENSES COMMENTARY	
Level 1	
Level 2	
Level 3	
Key to Tenses Commentary	
TRANSLATION ON THE TENSES	42
Level 1	42
Level 2	44
Key to Translation on the Tenses	45
OBLIQUE MOODS COMMENTARY	47
Level 1	
Level 2	51
Level 3	52
Key to Oblique Moods Commentary	
TRANSLATION ON THE OBLIQUE MOODS	
Level 1	
Level 2	
Level 3	
Key to Translation on the Oblique Moods	
MODAL VERBS COMMENTARY	
Level 1	
Level 2.	
Level 3.	
Key to Modal Verbs Commentary	
TRANSLATION ON MODAL VERBS	
Level 1	
Level 2	
Level 3.	
Key to Translation on Modal Verbs	
ARTICLES COMMENTARY	
Level 1	
Level 2	
Level 3	
Key to Articles Commentary	
TRANSLATION ON ARTICLES	85

Level 1 85
Level 2
Key to Translation on Articles
MOCK EXAMINATION CARDS90
LEVEL 1 90
Card 1 90
Card 2 92
Card 3 94
Card 4 96
Card 5 98
Card 6
Card 7
Card 8
Card 9
Card 10108
Key to Level 1110
LEVEL 2 117
Card 11117
Card 12118
Card 13119
Card 14120
Card 15122
Card 16123
Card 17124
Card 18126
Card 19127
Card 20128
Key to Level 2129
LEVEL 3 136
Card 21136
Card 22137
Card 23138
Card 24139
Card 25141
Card 26142
Card 27143
Card 28144
Card 29145
Card 30146
Key to Level 3 147
RFFFRFNCFS 155

ВВЕДЕНИЕ

Пособие разработано для студентов переводческого факультета, изучающих английский язык в качестве первого иностранного языка и готовящихся к сдаче экзамена по дисциплине «Практическая грамматика».

В качестве материала для повторения и подготовки служат экзаменационные материалы 2020-2021 учебного года. Тексты для анализа грамматических явлений представляют собой аутентичные и частично адаптированные тексты современного художественного английского дискурса. Экзаменационные материалы по «Практической грамматике» включают в себя 4 темы: изъявительное наклонение, сослагательное наклонение, модальные глаголы и артикли.

Пособие состоит из 3 частей:

- 1) справочный материал по вышеуказанным темам;
- 2) тренировочные упражнения по каждой из тем, разбитые на 2-3 уровня сложности и типу выполняемого задания (комментарий грамматического явления и перевод с русского на английский язык);
- 3) тренировочные экзаменационные карточки, разбитые на три уровня возрастающей сложности.

Каждая часть тренировочных упражнений снабжена ключами.

GRAMMAR GUIDE

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

When analyzing a *tense* form try to provide your perfect commentary. Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) the *tense*;
- 2) describe what action or state is it used *to denote*;
- 3) in case the form is **passive**, you say that the subject **is acted upon**/the doer of the action is obvious or unknown/it is not necessary to mention the doer of the action.

Examples of comments

1. The house was full of cowboy music and laughter. I <u>was sent</u> to the local shop for more milk and sugar.

Was sent is used in its *Past Simple Passive Tense* form to denote a *single past event*. The *passive* form is used as the subject was acted upon.

2. Every eye, living and dead, was fixed upon Professor McGonagall, who was speaking from the raised platform at the top of the Hall.

Was speaking is used in its *Past Continuous Tense* form to denote an action in progress during a definite period of time in the past.

3. His mother <u>has been supporting</u> me for a few years now, so I owe her a lot, but understandably I have begun to irritate her, and her irritation makes me grouchy and defensive.

Has been supporting is used in its *Present Perfect Continuous* tense form to denote an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now.

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	1) regular activities and events; 2) permanent characteristics and properties; 3) universal truths and generalizations; 4) timetables, itineraries, working hours; 5) present actions happening at the moment of speaking with stative and some	1) a single past event, fact or state; 2) a succession of single past events, facts or states; 3) repeated, habitual past actions or states	1) a single future action; 2) future habitual actions or states; 3) a succession of single future events, facts or states; 4) new decisions made at the moment of speaking (on-the-spot decisions);

	other verbs; 6) in stage directions, sports commentaries, instructions, demonstrations; 7) past actions in summaries of historical events; 8) future actions in subordinate clauses of time and condition; 9) timetables, itineraries, working hours; 10) in suggestions, offers; 11) main events in storytelling (plots of films, books; jokes, anecdotes)		5) to make predictions based on opinion, considered inevitable or out of anybody's control; 6) to express offers, promises, requests, refusals; 7) formal announcements of future plans and for weather forecasts; 8) in the main clauses of complex sentences with subordinate clauses of condition, time
Continuous	1) present actions (states) in progress happening at or around the present moment; 2) actions having a dynamic character; 3) actions of unusual frequency; 4) pre-arranged, planned, intended future actions; 5) background actions in storytelling	1) actions in progress at a definite moment in the past or during a definite period of time in the past; 2) past actions of unusual frequency; 3) a polite request or suggestion in the expressions of the type 'I was wondering' in situations referring to the present	1) an action that will occur in the normal course of events (future without intention); 2) a future action which takes place at a certain moment in the future or which starts before the certain moment and probably continues after it
Perfect	1) an action completed in the past but connected in its result with the present; 2) an incomplete action that started in the past and is still happening in the present with emphasis on the result of the activity;	1) a past action completed before another past action or before a moment in the past; 2) sentences with no sooner than, hardly when, scarcely when,	actions which will be finished before a stated future time or continuing situations up to a certain time

	3) future completed actions in subordinate clauses of time and condition	barely when may have an inverted word order	
Perfect Continuous	an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now or has just stopped with visible present results	 a past action of a certain duration completed before another past action; a past action of a certain duration that was still in progress at a given later moment in the past 	a durable action up to a certain time in the future

SIGNAL WORDS

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	always, usually, generally, occasionally, frequently, sometimes, often, twice a year, once a week, every day, every other day, once in a while, from time to time, hardly ever, seldom, rarely, daily, weekly, monthly	ago, last year, yesterday, the other day, in 1995	tomorrow, tonight, in a week/month/ year, etc., next week/month/ year, etc., at 2 p.m., in 2030
Continuous	now, at the moment, at present, all day (night, morning), the whole day (night, morning), still, these days, currently	at 2 p.m., at that time yesterday, from 2 till 5, all evening, the whole day, between one and two	tomorrow, tonight, in a week/month/ year, etc., next week/month/year, etc., at 2 p.m., in 2030
Perfect	recently, lately, already, yet, still, today, this morning, this week, ever, never, always, all my life, how long, so far, since, ever since, for, over	by, before, after, as soon as, by the time, when, no sooner than, hardly when, scarcely when, barely when	by, by the time, before

Perfect	for, since, all my life,	all day, for years,	by
Continuous	all morning, the	for 5 months, since	-
	whole morning, all	1999, when smb did	
	night, over	smth, how long	

	Ning at Change	ما المام ال	at Casab
Direct Speech			ect Speech
or a <i>present</i> or a <i>future tense</i>		_	oast tense
	in the main clause		main clause
Present	'I never eat meat.' he	Past Simple	He explained that
Simple	explained.		he never ate meat.
Present	'I' m waiting for Ann.'	Past	He said (that) he
Continuous	he said.	Continuous	was waiting for
			Ann.
Present	'I have found a flat,'	Past Perfect	He said (that) he
Perfect	he said.		had found a flat.
Present	He said, 'I' ve been	Past Perfect	He said he had
Perfect	waiting for ages.'	Continuous	been waiting for
Continuous			ages.
Past Simple	'I took it home with	Past Perfect	She said she had
	me,' she said.		taken it home with
			her.
Past	He said, 'When I saw	Past	He said that when
Continuous	them, they were	Continuous	he saw them, they
	playing tennis.'	OR Past	were playing/had
		Perfect	been playing
		Continuous	tennis.
Past Perfect	He said, 'I had	Past Perfect	He said that he had
	whitewashed the		whitewashed the
	ceiling by the time she		ceiling by the time
	phoned.'		she phoned.
Past Perfect	He said, 'I had been	Past Perfect	He said that he had
Continuous	whitewashing the	Continuous	been
	ceiling for a couple of		whitewashing the
	hours by the time she		ceiling for a couple
	phoned.'		of hours by the
			time she phoned.
Future	I said, 'I will/shall be in	Future	I said I would be in
Simple	Paris on Monday.'	Simple-in-the-	Paris on Monday.
		Past	
Future	'l will/shall be using	Future	She said she would
Continuous	the car myself on the	Continuous-	be using the car
	24th,' she said.	in-the-Past	herself on the
_			24th.
Future	I am sure they will	Future	I was sure they
Perfect	have whitewashed the	Perfect-in-	would have
	ceiling by 5 o'clock.	the-Past	whitewashed the
			ceiling by
			5 o'clock.

Future	I am sure they will	Future	I was sure they
Perfect	have been	Perfect	would have been
Continuous	whitewashing the	Continuous-	whitewashing the
	ceiling for 3 hours by 5	in-the-Past	ceiling for 3 hours
	o'clock.		by 5 o'clock.

Voice is the form of the verb which serves to show whether the subject of the sentence is the doer of the action expressed by the predicate verb or whether the subject of the sentence is acted upon. The passive form is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the required form and **Participle II** of the notional verb.

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	He delivers letters.	Letters are delivered .
Present Continuous	He is delivering the	The letters are being
Fresent Continuous	letters.	delivered.
Present Perfect	He has delivered the	The letters have been
Fresent Ferrect	letters.	delivered.
Dact Cimple	He delivered the letters.	The letters were
Past Simple	The delivered the letters.	delivered.
Past Continuous	He was delivering the	The letters were being
Past Continuous	letters.	delivered.
Past Perfect	He had delivered the	The letters had been
Past Periect	letters.	delivered.
Future Simple	He will deliver the letters.	The letters will be
i uture simple	The will deliver the letters.	delivered.
Future Perfect	He will have delivered the	The letters will have
i utule reliect	letters.	been delivered.

Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous and Future Perfect Continuous are not used in the passive for reasons of style.

THE OBLIQUE MOODS

When analyzing an *Oblique Mood* form try to provide your perfect commentary. Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) the *mood* and its morphological *form*;
- 2) the *syntactic structure* the mood is used in;
- 3) the *lexical environment* of the mood;
- 4) *time reference* (also explain *continuous* (the action is durable) and *passive* (the subject *is acted upon*) forms).

Examples of comments

1. I sat and waited. I rather wished I <u>hadn't left</u> that free newspaper on the train.

Hadn't left is used in its *perfect Subjunctive II* form in the *object* clause of a complex sentence *after 'wished'* in the main clause. The perfect form shows that the action is *prior* to the finite verb 'wished'.

2. I deliberately didn't react. I didn't suggest she <u>sit down</u>, nor did I stand up myself.

Sit down is used in its **Subjunctive I** form in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after **modal meaning** in the main clause

THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

	Syntactic structure	Lexical environment	Example	Notes
1	in a simple sentence	with <i>but for</i>	He <u>wouldn't not have won</u> , but for me.	
2	Sentence	with implied condition	I <u>wouldn't waste</u> my time on rubbish <i>in your place</i> .	
3		to sound polite/less straightforward	I <u>would think</u> they have a nice bar here in this hotel, don't they? I <u>would have thought</u> it a gross violation of duty and respect.	The perfect form shows the highest degree of politeness
4	in the main clause	with clauses of unreal condition	I <u>wouldn't cheat</u> at the exam if I were you. <u>Would</u> we <u>go</u> there were it to rain? (inversion) Had he known the truth, he would have helped them.	
5		with clauses of unreal concession	Even if they had wanted me to stay, I would have refused.	
6		with clauses of problematic condition (вдруг/случись так, что)	If I should meet her, I <u>would</u> speak to her. Should I meet her, I <u>would</u> speak to her.	

SUBJUNCTIVE II

	Syntactic	Lexical	Example	Notes
	structure	environment		Would in its
1	simple sentences	after oh , that / if only to express wish/regret	Oh, that the storm were over! If only he had won! If only you would keep the place tidy! (Subjunctive II, polite request or annoyance)	Subjunctive II form expresses polite request or annoyance. The non-perfect Infinitive after would refers the action to the present/future
2		with modal verbs could, might, would (used in their Subjunctive II forms)	Could you just give me a lift? They might have done it deliberately. Would you let me see them, please?	Perfect Infinitives refer to the past (show that the action is prior to the moment of speaking)
3		with the modal expression of advice (had better/had best in Subjunctive II + non-perfect infinitive)	I <u>had better</u> get inside.	Had better + non- perfect Infinitive only! (the action is posterior to the moment of speaking)
4		with the modal expression of preference (would rather/would sooner in Subjunctive II + infinitive)	'Well, I' <u>d rather</u> have a puppy.' I' <u>d rather</u> not have gone by plane.	The non-perfect Infinitive refers the action to the present/future Perfect Infinitives after would rather refer to the past (show that the action is prior to the moment of speaking)
5	attributive clauses	it's (high/about) time	It was time he learnt the rule. It is time WAS going home.	Subjunctive II non- perfect only

6	predicative clauses	a link verb (be, seem, feel, etc) followed by conjunctions as if/as though	It looks as if she didn't like me. I feel as if I had never left home. He felt as if he were falling ill.	
7	object clauses	would rather/would sooner in the main clause	I would rather you had stayed there.	
8	object clauses	wish in the main clause	I wished it were not raining. I wish I had kept that letter. I wish you wouldn't* interrupt me. I wish I/you could sing/could have sung.	Would in its Subjunctive II form expresses polite request or annoyance *\$1≠\$\$2, a posterior action Could in its Subjunctive II form expresses lack of possibility
9	indirect questions	doubt in the main clause, conjunctions if/whether	I doubt if he were at home. I wonder if he were ready to answer.	
10	clauses of unreal condition	in the main clause the Conditional Mood is used.	I wouldn't cheat at the exam if I were you. Would we go there were it to rain? (inversion) Had he known the truth, he would have helped them.	
11	clauses of unreal concession	in the main clause the Conditional Mood is used, after even if, even though	Even if they had wanted me to stay, I would have refused.	
12	clauses of comparison or manner	after as if, as though	His voice broke <i>as if</i> he <u>were going</u> to cry.	

SUBJUNCTIVE I

	Syntactic structure	Lexical environment	Example	Notes
1	in a simple sentence	in formulaic expressions denoting wish or concession	<u>Be</u> yours a happy journey! Success <u>attend</u> you!	= 'May + Infinitive'
2			<u>Come</u> what may. So <u>be</u> it.	= 'Let +Infinitive'
3		commands/requests with an indefinite pronoun as a subject	Nobody move! Everybody leave the room.	= 'Let + Infinitive'
4	in subject, object, predicative, attributive-appositive	after modal meaning in the main clause	Do you accept our requirement that each of you not work on Sunday?	
5	clauses	after fear in the main clause	I <i>fear lest</i> he <u>find</u> it out. (как бы он не узнал)	
6	in clauses of purpose	after so that, in order that, so, lest (= for fear that)	He broke off again lest he say too much.	

THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

	Syntactic structure	Lexical environment	Example	Notes
1	in a simple sentence	beginning with <i>And what if</i> ?	And what if he should come back?	
2	in subject, object, predicative, attributive-	after emotion/personal reaction in the main clause	I find it <i>natural</i> that you <u>should</u> help him.	
3	appositive clauses	after modal meaning in the main clause	It <i>is required</i> that each of you <u>should</u> work hard.	non-perfect Suppositional Mood only
4		after fear in the main clause	I <i>fear lest</i> he should find it out. (как бы он не узнал)	

5	in clauses of problematic condition	in the main clause 1) the Conditional Mood, 2) the Imperative Mood (the most common pattern) 3) or the Indicative Mood is used 4) might/could+infinitive	If I should meet her, I would speak to her. Should he come, tell him to wait. Should it be wet we shall stay at home. Should it be wet we might stay at home.	
6	in clauses of purpose	after so that, in order that, so, lest (= for fear that)	He broke off again <i>lest</i> he should say too much.	

THE MODAL VERBS

When analyzing a *modal verb* followed by an *infinitive* try to provide your perfect commentary. Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) that you analyse a compound verbal modal predicate,
- 2) that it consists of the *modal verb* in the *form* (you name it only if the modal verb has more than one form) and *meaning*,
- 3) that it is followed by an *infinitive*, name the *form* of the infinitive,
- 4) time reference.

Examples of comments

1. I <u>couldn't sleep</u> last night, Matthew. Not one minute.

Couldn't sleep is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** in its Past Simple Tense form to denote lack of ability and the non-perfect common infinitive active **sleep**. Time reference to the past is shown with the help of the modal verb.

2. Attention, this is a reminder to females under nine that hair ribbons <u>are to</u> be neatly tied at all times.

Are to be tied is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb are to in its Present Simple Tense form to denote a plan/order/instruction and the non-perfect common infinitive active be tied. Time reference to the present and future is shown with the help of the modal verb.

3. 'You got it?' shouted Ron, raising himself a little higher on his pillows. 'No one tells me anything! You could have mentioned it!'

Could have mentioned is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** to denote *criticism* and the *perfect common infinitive active* **have mentioned** which refers the action to the past.

MODAL VERBS: SUMMARY TABLE

II	Time reference		
Use	Present	Future	Past
ability/lack of ability	I can understand everything he wrote.	I will be able to understand everything, he wrote.	She was able to pass the exam. (a single successful action) I could play the piano at 5. (general ability) She made horrible sandwiches which I couldn't eat. (a single unsuccessful action)
general possibility	It can be very co		She said it could be
(90 % certain)	He is to be seen		very cold in winter.
	running with his	s team.	Next day not a horse was to be seen.
possibility (in academic language) (90 % certain)	Crocodile eggs may weigh 50- 160 grams each.		Public slaves owned by the Roman government might work on public building projects.
chances of sth	He may/might/o		I think you
happening (40-50 %	be planning to I	rejoin You-	may/might/could have been his
certain)	Is he likely to w	vin the race?	favourite ever pupil.
probability (85 % certain)	She ought to/should be home by now.	He ought to/ should win the race. He is likely to win the race.	They ought to/should have learnt that by now.
deduction (90 %	'You must be	-	You must have lied
certain*)	joking,' he		through your teeth.
	said. He must be <u>un</u> aware of the task.		He must have had <u>no</u> spare time.
negative deduction	He can't/couldn't be more than five years old.	-	She can't/couldn't have taken offence.
certainty (95 % certain*)	Don't phone them now - they will be having dinner.	It will be fine tomorrow. He is certain/sure/bound to find a way in.	Then you will have seen that there have been not so much leaks as floods concerning your adventure in the Hall of Prophecy?

doubt emotional colouring	Can/Could he be simply announcing his love for a farmer's daughter? How could it be? In God's	-	Can/Could Dumbledore have let such things happen? How could it have been broken!?
	name, how? How should I know ?		Deen Broken.
supposition	I dare say you're right.	-	-
unreal (conditional) possibility or ability	His father might recognize him i directly into each	f they looked	In another mood, I could/might have taken this as a strike against the three of us.
criticism	'You could/might ask before you borrow my car.' You ought to/should be more helpful.		Well, you might/could have had the decency to tell me beforehand. I ought to/should have checked with you first.
necessity	Need we talk? Do we need to talk?	'And you will need to move a little closer,' he said.	He had to leave early for work. He needed to return a book to the library.
absence of necessity	I've never had to worry about money, really. 'I don't have to/don't need to answer your questions any more.' 'You needn't wake up half the castle.'	You won't have to/won't need to answer my questions.	They didn't have to wait/didn't need to wait very long before people started turning up.
absence of necessity with an action which was performed though unnecessary	-		I needn't have worried.

obligation coming from external authority	I also don't have a boss, a suit and tie I have to wear.	He will have to obey.	We had to wait for hours.
a plan	'You are to create an antidote for the poison within it before the end of the lesson,' - finished Slughorn.		Who was to make a reservation?
an unfulfilled plan	-		He was to have submitted a report.
obligation/duty	It's you who oug be scared!	ght to/should	-
an unfulfilled past obligation	-		It ought to/should have been done on Monday.
strong obligation	You must stop o	it a red light.	I had to have a licence to drive a car.
obligation (in formal legal language)	The tenant shal for all repairs.	l be responsible	-
order, instruction	No one is to lea building.	ve this	No one was to leave the building.
advice	Perhaps you ought to/should give the old man a call. (recommendation) You had better hurry. Which one shall/should I buy? (asking for advice)		We ought to/should have won in the extra thirty minutes.
emphatic advice	You mustn't ide client.		-
permission	You can/may all wear what you like.	He will be allowed to read this.	I said he could read it. (general permission) I was allowed to watch a movie. (the action was permitted and performed) He said we might leave.
request requests for	Can/could you shed any light on this one? How may/might we help you today? Will you tell them? Spit it out, will you? (command) How shall I say it?		I asked if he could/was allowed stay there. He asked me to tell them. He asked if I would tell them.
orders/instructions			

suggestion/an offer	Shall I take you	homa?	
suggestion/an offer	Shall I take you home?		_
	'You could say sorry,' suggested Harry bluntly.		
prohibition	We might stay the night. You can't have that.		We couldn't play
prombition	You may not wo		our own music at
	_	_	Starbucks.
	computer. (forn	iui)	We were not allowed
			to play our own
			music at Starbucks.
strict prohibition	You mustn't che	at in evens	She said I mustn't
strict prohibition	Tou mustif t che	eut III exuiiis.	cheat at the exam.
			l was forbidden to smoke.
habitual	'No charm will v	work on those '	Rags always lay
actions/insistence/	said Madam Pon		down on the kitchen
refusal to perform	Sala Madalli i oli	iji ey.	stoop. My mother
an action			would call him in
an action			and feed him
			breakfast after she
			got back from taking
			my dad to the local
			train station.
volition/	I will survive.		He promised he
determination			would survive.
threat	You shall have	it.	-
promise	The last enemy	that <i>shall be</i>	-
1	destroyed is de		
courage/lack of	Dare you tell	Will you dare	He dared not open
courage	him the news?	(to) tell him	his eyes to look.
	He doesn't	the news?	He didn't dare (to)
	dare (to) open		open his eyes to
	the book.		look.
indignation	How dare you	-	-
_	suggest such a		
	thing?		
challenging	I dare you to	l will dare	I dared him to taste
	taste this	him to taste	that dish.
	dish.	this dish.	
destiny	-	-	I had no idea that he
			was to grow up to
			be what he is.

Set phrases with modal verbs

I couldn't care less. – Мне это совершенно безразлично. Things couldn't be better! – Лучше не бывает! could do with something (informal) – не помешало бы, не отказался бы can't help doing something – быть не в состоянии удержаться от, не мочь не делать что-то

can't (help) but do – не мочь не, ничего другого не остается, как

if i may say so - если я могу так сказать

it might have been worse - могло бы быть и хуже

be that as it may - как бы то ни было

Try as I may/might = although I try

may/might as well - с таким же успехом

I must be off - мне нужно идти

it's a must - это необходимо

I must say – должен сказать

You've got to be kidding (me)! – Этого не может быть! Ты разыгрываешь меня!

Where am I to go? - Куда же мне деваться? Куда же мне идти?

What am I to do? - Что мне делать? Как мне быть?

What is to become of me? – Что со мной будет?

Who is to begin? – Кому начинать?

Who is to blame? - Кто виноват?

You had better study hard **if** you **are to pass** your exams. - ...если хочешь сдать...

Why should I go there? - С какой стати мне идти туда?

How should I know? - Откуда мне знать?

will do ((informal) – expressing willingness to carry out a request or suggestion

Boys will be boys. - Мальчишки остаются мальчишками.

Accidents will happen. – Несчастные случаи неизбежны.

What will be will be. – Чему быть, того не миновать.

THE ARTICLES

When analyzing an *article* try to provide your perfect commentary. Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) the article and its function,
- 2) the *morphological characteristics* of the noun or word it is used with,
- 3) some *other peculiarities* if necessary (*The specification is provided by ..., The noun is modified by ..., etc.*).

Examples of comments

1. If I were writing <u>a</u> novel, Arsenal would win the '78 Cup Final.

The *indefinite* article is used in its *classifying* function with a *countable* noun in the *singular*.

2. They were a motley collection; a mixture of $\underline{\text{the}}$ weak seeking protection, the ambitious seeking some shared glory.

The definite article is used in its generic function with a substantivized adjective. A group of people is meant.

3. __ Hatred boiled up in Harry at the sight of Severus Snape.

The zero article is used in its generic function with an uncountable abstract noun.

THE FUNCTIONS OF ARTICLES

a/an	-	the
1. the classifying	1. the <i>classifying</i>	1. the <i>specifying</i> function,
function with countable	function	the specification is carried
singular nouns	• with countable	out by means of:
She bought a book.	plural nouns	1) the preceding context:
and he agine <u>armeen.</u>	I have brought you	I was at the wedding. <u>The</u>
	pencils.	bride was very excited.
with descriptive of-	• with a <i>predicative</i>	2) the situation:
phrases denoting:	noun in the plural	Do you know the girl?
1) quality - a book of	They are good	3) the meaning of the
interest	children.	<i>noun</i> (with nouns denoting
2) quantity or measure -		unique things: the sun, the
a box of two tons		moon, the Universe)
3) composition -a group		The sun was getting
of children		warmer.
4) material - a wall of		4) a restrictive modifier
glass		(adjectives in the
5) content - a cup of tea		superlative degree,
6) age -a boy of five		some/many/none/most of
7) size - a house of		the, the same, the right
enormous size		(тот, который нужен),
8) comparison - a wild		the wrong, the very, the
cat of a woman (=a		only, the main, the
woman like a wild cat)		principal, the central, the
9) combinations		left, the right, the coming,
a friend of mine,		the following, the present,
a book of his own etc.		the former (первый), the
		latter (последний):
		You have <u>the softest voice</u>
		I've ever heard.
2. the <i>generic</i> function	2. the <i>generic</i>	2. the <i>generic</i> function
a=every with countable	function	• the=a type, a whole
singular nouns	• with countable	class is meant
\underline{A} drowning man catches	plural nouns	<u>The</u> blue whale is the
at a straw.	Real friends share	largest mammal on Earth.
	everything.	• with <i>substantivized</i>
	• with uncountable abstract nouns	adjectives and participles
		denoting abstract notions
	Love means	(the evil, the old, the
	sacrifice.with uncountable	unknown, the possible, the
	concrete nouns	obvious etc.):
	She said: 'I knitted	They noticed something
	the socks myself of	beyond <u>the usual</u> in his
	thick grey wool.'	voice.
	tilick grey woot.	voice.

	 with substantivized adjectives and participles denoting plural personal entities (the French, the British, the elderly, the poor, the starving) The strongest have their hours of depression. with collective nouns: The gentry are polite. with plural count nouns with the meaning 'the whole body of' (the Russians, the Liberals, the workers): The Italians are very hospitable people.
3. the <i>numerical</i> function	
with nouns denoting	
time, measure, weight	
I told you this <u>a year</u>	
ago.	
• the numerals	
hundred, thousand,	
million, the nouns	
dozen, score	
She speaks <u>half a dozen</u>	
languages.	
 after the negative 	
not:	
<u>Not a</u> word was spoken.	
• in some <i>set phrases</i>	
like at a time, at a gulp,	
at a draught:	
He drank his juice <u>at</u>	
a gulp.	
4. the aspective	
function:	
with abstract nouns Her face had a calmness.	
Her face had a calmness	
that was new to her.	

 with nouns denoting 	
unique things (the sun,	
the moon, the universe)	
when a certain aspect is	
meant, usually the noun	
has an attribute	
An orange sun was rising	
in the east.	

Remember

__ Child *as he was*, he didn't play with toy cars. She is __ coward *enough to keep silent*.

THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH UNCOUNTABLE ABSTRACT NOUNS

a/an	-	the
	When used in a general	
	sense:	
	(the generic function)	
	Love means sacrifice.	
		When used with a limiting attribute or when the situation makes the idea definite (the specifying function): He was <u>the</u> courage of his father.
		With substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions (the generic function) the usual, the normal, the average, the beautiful etc.
When used with or without a descriptive attribute, the noun denotes a certain aspect of an abstract noun (the aspective use). Her face had a	Some attributes do not bring out a special aspect. They denote: 1) <u>degree</u> : great, perfect, huge, endless I felt (-) perfect confidence in him. 2) <u>time</u> : modern ancient,	But: with the limiting of-phrase: <u>The French poetry of</u> that period.
calmness that was	daily	
new to her.	I like (-) modern poetry .	
HEW LOTTEL.	22	

There was <u>a</u>	3) <u>nationality and</u>	
bitterness in her	geography: English, Polish	
voice.='a certain	etc.	
bitterness'	I like (-) English literature.	
	4) <u>authenticity</u> : real	
certain/curious/	symbolic etc.	
peculiar + abstract	I felt (-) genuine fear .	
noun:	5) social and spiritual	
She stopped him	•	
	characteristics: racial,	
with <u>a peculiar</u>	religious etc.	
<u>interest.</u>	I don't like (-) capitalist	
	society.	
	6) geography: Minsk, Rome	
	etc.	
	It's one o'clock by (-) Minsk	
	time.	
	7) various trends and genres	
	<u>in art:</u> dramatic, theatrical,	
	classical, romantic etc.;	
	He is fond of (-) <u>classica</u> l	
	music.	
	8) man's manner or	
	behaviour (polite, formal,	
	nervous, serious, etc.).	
	Have you ever had (-) formal	
	education in design or new	
	media?	
	Nouns of verbal character	The noun <i>weather</i> is
	(denoting actions, activity,	used in a general
	process: advice, trade,	sense:
	progress etc.)	What is <u>the</u> weather
	and the nouns <i>change</i> , <i>fun</i> ,	today?
	health, luck, work, money,	If <u>the</u> weather
	nature, news, (outer)	changes.
	space, weather, advice,	
	permission, research,	
	homework, evidence, toast,	
	lightning, scenery	
	It is (-) good news.	
	She is making (-) great	
	progress.	
	What (-) fine weather!	
Period, population,		
distance, height,		
salary		
+of+numeral+noun:		
It was <i>a period of</i>		
five days.		
I IIYE UUVJ.		

10.5	D (.	
<u>It is a</u>	But:	
pleasure/comfort/	with pleasure,	
<u>disgrace/</u>	feel pity,	
disappointment/	a sigh of relief	
pity/relief/shame to		
see you.		
<u>What a</u>		
pleasure/comfort/		
<u>disgrace/</u>		
<u>disappointment/</u>		
pity/relief/shame.		
BUT:	With nouns in attributive (of)	
She stopped him	and adverbial <u>(with, in)</u>	
with	prepositional phrases of	
<u>a certain/curious/</u>	manner:	
peculiar interest.	She gave a look <u>of (-) cold</u>	
She stopped him	<u>disapproval</u> .	
with <u>a calmness</u> that	She looked at the cat	
was new to her.	with (-) curiosity.	

THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH PERSONAL NAMES

a/an		the
1) a member of a family is meant: I have often wondered if Arthur was really <u>a</u> Burton.	1) personal names: There was a letter from Susan inviting me to a party.	1) with a name in the plural to indicate <i>the</i> whole family (the generic function): The Elliots were intelligent people.
2) a name is modified by a descriptive attribute and is the centre of communication in the sentence: He was met at the door by <u>an</u> angry Jane, who shouted at him.	2) little, old, young, dear, poor, honest personal names: Young Peter listened with his dim smile.	2) with a name modified by a <i>limiting</i> attribute (the specifying function): Is he <i>the Jones</i> who is a writer?
3) 'a'='certain': I heard it from <u>a</u> Mr Brown.	3) Mother, Father, Aunt, Uncle, Grandmother, Grandfather, Baby, Nurse, Cook, (treated as proper names by the members of that family): Mother is still resting. Is Nurse back?	3) with a name modified by a descriptive attribute when: a) the limitation is clear from the context/situation/an 'of-phrase'(the specifying function):

4) names of persons become countable nouns indicating: a) concrete objects: He wanted to know how much a Ford cost. b) or typical features associated with a well-known name: If you are a Napoleon, you will play a game of power.	4) personal names preceded by titles, ranks or family relations: Lord Byron, Professor Higgins, Dr Smith, President Lincoln, Colonel Brown, aunt Polly.	That was a detail that had been overlooked by the embarrassed Otto. Mozart was called the Raphael of music. b) the attribute indicates a permanent quality of the person in question: The modest Tom could not say a word. 4) personal names preceded by nouns denoting jobs, nationality, belief: The artist Smith acted nicely.
---	---	---

ARTICLES WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

names of continents most names of	Europe, Asia, Antarctica, Africa, North America, South America BUT the Arctic (Арктика, Северный Полярный круг), the Antarctic (regions) Russia, Germany,	countries with	the Netherlands, the
countries	Japan, Turkey, India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Mexico,	plural names and with <i>Republic</i> ,	Philippines, the Czech Republic, the United States, the United
	Guatemala, Great Britain, France,	Kingdom, United, etc.	Arab Emirates, the Republic of Ireland,
	Belarus, Brazil,	omica, etc.	the United Kingdom,
	Canada, Egypt, China, Spain,		the USA, the Soviet Union, the People's
	Holland		Republic of China, the Roman Empire

		names of some countries can take both: the zero article (-) and the definite article (the)	(the) Sudan, (the) Yemen, (the) Congo, (the) Ivory Coast, (the) Lebanon, (the) Senegal, (the) Ukraine, the Argentine / Argentina
cities, towns, states and administrative regions	London, Minsk, Edinburgh, Cardiff, Belfast, Boston, Albany, Buffalo, Paris, Berlin Sydney, Rome, Vienna, Venice, Brussels, Madrid, San Francisco, Cairo, Luxor, Constantinople, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York State, Texas, Bergen County, Marin County, Florida, England, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland, Tuscany, Bavaria, Ohio Mind (-) Vatican City but the Vatican Mind the pattern the + common noun + proper noun: the City of Leeds, the City of Prague		
	Martha 5	Exception	the Hague
names of continents, countries, cities, towns, states and administrative regions when modified by attributes	Northern Europe, Central Africa, Asia Minor, Central Asia, modern France, industrial Yorkshire, ancient Rome, medieval Europe	names of geographical regions	the Crimea, the Caucasus ['kɔːkəsəs] (Кавказ), the Ruhr, the Riviera, the Middle East (Ближний Восток), the Far East, the Midlands

describing them from a geographical or historical point of view			
names of individual mountains and hills	Mount Vesuvius, Mount Everest, Mount Washington, Mont Blanc, Box Hill, Elbrus BUT mind the pattern the + common noun + proper noun: the Mount of Olives	names of mountain ranges and groups of hills	the Alps, the Urals, the Andes, the Rocky Mountains, the Himalayas [himəˈleiə(z)], the Grampians, the Cambrian Mountains, the Pennines, the Cordilleras, the Pyrenees
names of individual islands	Bermuda, Cyprus, Java, Cuba BUT mind the pattern the + common noun + proper noun: the Isle of Man	names of groups of islands	the Bermudas, the Canaries (the Canary Islands), the West Indies, the Azores, the Seychelles, the Bahamas, the Channel Islands, the Balearic Islands
names of peninsulas (the word 'peninsula' is not mentioned)	Labrador	names of peninsulas (the word 'peninsula' is mentioned)	the Balkan Peninsula ['bɔːlkən] (Балканский п-ов) the Kola Peninsula (Кольский полуостров) the Apennine / Italian Peninsula, the Hindustan peninsula
names of lakes, bays, beaches, capes, falls which are usually accompanied by Lake, Bay, Beach, Cape, Falls	Lake Ontario, Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, Lake Geneva, Lake Baikal, Lake Victoria, San Francisco Bay, Palm Beach, Cape Cod, Victoria Falls	names of groups of lakes	the Great (American) Lakes (Великие озера) the Arrow Lakes

	1	
BUT the Great Salt		
Lake and mind the		
pattern <i>the</i> +		
common noun +		
proper noun the		
Lake of Geneva, the		
Bay of Biscay, the		
Cape of Good Hope		
	names of oceans, seas, rivers, straits, channels, canals	the Arctic Ocean (Северный Ледовитый океан), the Arctic Circle (Северный Полярный круг), the Atlantic (Ocean), the Indian (Ocean), the Pacific Ocean, the Arctic Ocean, the Mediterranean (Sea) [ˌmedɪt(ə)ˈreɪnɪən], the Baltic (Sea), the Baltic (Sea), the Tasman (Sea), the Caspian (Sea), the Irish Sea, the North Sea, the North Sea, the Red Sea, the Sea of Japan, the Bosp(h)orus Sea, the Tyrrhenian Sea, the Gulf of Mexico, the (River) Nile, the (River) Congo, the Mohawk River, the Thames, the
		Severn, the Humber, the Mersey, the Rhine,
		the (River) Seine,
		the Tiber, the Amur,
		the Missouri River,
		the Mississippi River,
		the Ganges
		[ˈgænʤiːz](Ганг),
		the Bering Strait,
		the Suez ['suːɪz]
		Canal,

		the English Channel, the Panama Canal, the Barge Canal
	names of deserts	the Sahara, the Gobi, the Kara-Kum, the Mojave
	geographical names modified by a restrictive attribute or a restrictive attributive clause	The graduates are happy to see the Cambridge of their youth again. It was the Britain he spent his childhood in.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE (A / AN)

geographical names modified	We now have a <u>new</u> Britain, confident,
by a descriptive attribute	optimistic
	It was a <u>different</u> Paris , unknown to him.

ARTICLES WITH MISCELLANEOUS PROPER NAMES

names of	Park Lane, Oxford		the High Street, the
most streets,	Street, Fifth		Mall, the Strand, the
roads,	Avenue, Abbey		City of London
squares	Road, Montague		
	Road, Trafalgar		
	Square, Downing		
	Street, Baines		
	Street, Tverskaya		
	Street		
	BUT: (-)/the Red		
	Square		
		names of	the M25, the A1, the
		motorways and	M1, the Oregon Trail
		numbered	
		roads	
names of	Central Park, Hyde		the Botanical Gardens
parks and	Park, St. James's		
ZOOS	Park, London Zoo		
		museums,	The British Museum,
		galleries,	the Louvre, the Getty
		cinemas,	Museum, the
		theatres	Smithsonian Museum,
			the Archaeological
			Museum,

names of hotels, restaurants, clubs, pubs, shops ending in -s or 's	Harrods, Luigi's, McDonald's, Selfridges, Brown's, Leoni's, Turner's, Madame Tussaud's, Bloomingdales, Macy's	names of hotels, restaurants, clubs, pubs, shops	the State Tretyakov Gallery, the Odeon Cinema, the National Theatre, the Globe Theatre, the Bolshoi Theatre The Ritz, the Grand Hotel, the Palace Hotel, the Hilton, the Jumbo Stay, the Watergate, the Copper Kettle, the Royal Oak, the National Liberal Club, the Central Department Store
names of airports and railway stations (usually named after people or places)	Heathrow (Airport), Gatwick (Airport), Waterloo (Station), Oxford Circus (Station), John F. Kennedy International Airport, Stockholm Arlanda Airport, Miami International Airport		
names of bridges (usually named after people or places)	Waterloo Bridge, Tower Bridge, London Bridge	names of bridges (usually consisting of common nouns)	the Golden Gate Bridge (мост Золотые ворота), the Brooklyn Bridge, the Bridge of Sighs (мост Вздохов), the Forth Bridge (мост через залив Ферт- оф-Форт), the Millennium Bridge
names of public buildings (named after people or places)	Westminster Abbey, Buckingham Palace, St. Paul's Cathedral, St. Matthew's Church, Barclays Bank	names of public buildings (usually consisting of common nouns)	the White House, the Royal Exchange, the Old Bailey, the Tower, the Eiffel Tower, the Palace of Versailles, the Great Wall of China, the Blue Mosque, the Basilica of St. Paul, the Kremlin, the Mansion House,

names of schools, universities and colleges (named after people or places)	Bradford Grammar School, Merton College, Oxford University, Harvard University, Manchester University, Liverpool University	names of schools, universities and colleges (usually consisting of common nouns)	the Higher School of Economics, the Medical Academy, the Sorbonne mind the pattern the + common noun + proper noun: the University of Oxford, the University of London, the University of Miami, the University of Indiana
names of political organizations and institutions	Parliament (in the UK), Congress (in the USA) NATO, UNICEF (abbreviations pronounced as one word)	names of political organizations and institutions	The House of Commons, the Houses of Parliament, the Senate, the Cabinet, the Labour Party, the United Nations, the European Parliament, the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, the Federal Reserve Bank, the BBC, the FBI
names of magazines and journals	Cosmopolitan, Newsweek, Vogue, Time, Punch, Scientific American, Hello, Newsweek, Life	newspapers	The Times, the New York Times, the Herald Tribune, the Guardian, the Daily Telegraph, the Daily Mirror, the Washington Post, the Independent Mind: The Wall Street Journal (It's a newspaper!!!)
foreign newspapers	Pravda, Zvezda, Le Monde, Der Spiegel	magazine titles which express a job or function tend to have the	the Spectator, the Economist, the New Statesman, the New Yorker
names of sporting events (named after people or places)	Wimbledon (tennis), Ascot and Epsom (horse-racing), Henley (rowing)	names of sporting events (usually consisting of common nouns)	the Olympic Games, the World Cup

О. В. Аношина

names of spacecraft, aircraft	Apollo 17, Boeing 737	names of ships, trains	The Titanic, the Queen Elizabeth, the Orient Express
names of holidays	Christmas, Easter, Mother's Day, Saint Valentine's Day		
		historical periods and events	the Middle Ages, the Dark Ages, the Enlightenment, the Renaissance, the French Revolution, the American Revolution

ULTIMATE REVISION

TENSES COMMENTARY

LEVEL 1

1. Every store in the mall closed at 9:00 p.m., and by 9:15 Lilly Reed <u>had</u> <u>turned off</u> the registers, punched the time clock, engaged the alarm system, and locked both doors of the ladies' boutique where she worked as an assistant manager.

Had turned off is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II perfect/a modal verb) form of the verb to turn off used to denote a/an ... (succession of past actions/unreal action/past action/past action completed before a moment in the past/past action completed before another past action).

2. Mundungus <u>scrambled up</u> and <u>pulled out</u> his wand; Hermione, however, was too quick for him.

Scrambled up and **pulled out** are ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) forms of the verbs **to scramble up** and **to pull out** used to denote a/an/- ... (succession of past events/unreal actions/habitual past actions).

3. It was a cold night but overwarm inside, and Dan was edging into a doze when Doctor John raised his hand and said, 'I've been lying to my wife about something, and I don't know how to stop.'

Have been lying is ... (the Present Perfect Tense/the Present Perfect Passive Tense/the Present Perfect Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II perfect continuous) form of the verb to lie used to denote an ... (action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now/action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and has just stopped with visible present results/unreal durable action).

4. The stewardess spotted me before he did. He <u>was chatting</u> away to her, his face pale and serious, and then he saw me through the legs of all those arriving tourists and business types.

Was chatting is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous) form of the verb **to chat** used to denote a/an ... (past action of unusual frequency/action in progress at a definite moment in the past).

5. He'<u>d brought</u> excellent wine and chocolates as gifts, but he knew now that they were dumb gifts.

Had brought is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II perfect/a modal verb) form of the verb **to bring** used to denote a/an ... (succession of past actions/unreal action/past action/past action completed before a moment in the past/past action connected in its result with the present).

6. So they stood in the kitchen, and he <u>washed</u> and she <u>wiped</u>, and suddenly the noisy fun gossip faded to nothing.

Washed and **wiped** are ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) forms of the verbs **to wash** and **to wipe** used to denote a/an/- ... (succession of past events/unreal actions/habitual past actions).

7. The kitchen was almost unrecognizable. Every surface now shone; copper pots and pans had been burnished to a rosy glow.

Had been burnished is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/the Past Perfect Passive Tense/Subjunctive II perfect/ Subjunctive II perfect passive) form of the verb to burnish used to denote a/an ... (succession of past actions/unreal action/past action/past action completed before a moment in the past/past action completed before another past action). The subject ... (acts/is acted upon).

8. 'Wait! <u>Have</u> you <u>told</u> Snape you saw this?'

Have told is ... (the Present Perfect Tense form/the Present Perfect Passive Tense form/a compound verbal modal predicate) of the verb **to tell** used to denote a ... (single past action/past action connected in its result with the present/obligation coming from external authority).

9. 'I have your word, Harry Potter, that you will give me the sword of Gryffindor if I <u>help</u> you?'

help is ... (the Present Simple Tense/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive I) form of the verb **to help** used in an ... (adverbial clause of condition/adverbial clause of time/object clause) to denote a ... (future action/habitual action/single event).

10. Kyle was relieved when his mother did not answer the phone.

Did not answer is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to answer** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past action).

11. Visits with his mother were painful. If the meds <u>were</u> out of order, she would lie on the sofa with her eyes closed, unbathed, unkempt, often inconsolable in her gloom and misery.

Were is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to be** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/habitual past state/unreal action/habitual past action).

12. In the maze, Agnes suspected cheating, for it can't have been a superior sense of intuition which <u>had sent</u> him darting away from her down one alley and then another until she had lost him.

Had sent is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II perfect/a modal verb) form of the verb **to send** used to denote a/an ... (succession of past actions/unreal action/past action//past action completed before a moment in the past/past action completed before another past action).

13. 'Mummy all right?' 'She's okay.' He paused, frowning at the slow-moving traffic heading for the motorway. 'But she <u>argues</u> with Richard. They had a little bit of a row about Britney.'

Argues is ... (the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive I) form of the verb **to argue** used to denote a/an/- ... (universal truth/present action happening at the moment of speaking/regular activity/unreal action/habitual unreal action).

14. When he <u>met</u> friends, it was always at a bar with a long night ahead of them.

Met is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to meet** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past action).

15. 'When I <u>left</u> you late that night I ran into Tony Croom, and we walked back to Mount Street together.'

left is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to leave** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past action).

16. 'A wand <u>was taken</u> from you upon your arrival at the Ministry today, Mrs Cattermole,' Umbridge was saying. 'Eight-and-three-quarter inches, cherry, unicorn-hair core. Do you recognize the description?'

Was taken is ... (the Past Simple Passive Tense/the Past Simple Tense/the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to take** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past action). The subject ... (acts/is acted upon).

17. They found Hermione downstairs in the kitchen. She <u>was being served</u> coffee and hot rolls by Kreacher and wearing the slightly manic expression that Harry associated with exam review.

Was being served is ... (the Past Simple Passive Tense/the Past Continuous Passive Tense/the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II passive/Subjunctive II continuous passive) form of the verb **to serve** used to denote a/an ... (past action of unusual frequency/action in progress at a definite moment in the past/single past event/habitual past action). The subject ... (acts/is acted upon).

18. At the far end of the court, just under the ancient scoreboard, a man in a dark suit <u>walked</u> through the door and leaned against the retractable bleachers.

Walked and **leaned** are ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) forms of the verbs **to walk** and **to lean** used to denote a/an/- ... (succession of past events/unreal actions/habitual past actions).

19. Marek <u>went</u> from one to the next, patting the pockets, but he still did not find it.

Went is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to go** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past action).

20. A small woman stood up; she was trembling from head to foot.

Was trembling is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous) form of the verb **to tremble** used to denote a/an ... (past action of unusual frequency/action in progress at a definite moment in the past).

LEVEL 2

21. 'And <u>are</u> you <u>taking</u> that dress with you?' 'No. I just wanted to see if it still fits.'

Are taking is ... form used to denote ...

22. It began two years ago but I <u>had worked</u> for the company for 17 years before the problem.

Had worked is ... form used to denote ...

23. Many of the employees involved <u>were fired</u>, but somehow, she was able to keep her job.

Were fired is ... form used to denote ...

24. She looked happy. I felt a stab of pain when I remembered she used to look like that when she was by my side. The mixture of pride and happiness you feel when you have found the one you have been looking for.

Have been looking for is ... form used to denote ...

25. 'If you <u>leave</u> a mission in charge of a native missionary, no matter how trustworthy he seems, in course of time you'll find he's let abuse creep in.'

Leave is ... form used to denote ...

26. Now, when I <u>was planning</u> this baby shower, I asked Jess what she thought we should buy Becky.

Was planning is ... form used to denote ...

27. And that's what we've done.

Have done is ... form used to denote ...

28. 'And what about you, Harry? <u>Are</u> you <u>coming</u> with me? I'm not doing it if they don't want you.'

Are coming is ... form used to denote ...

29. She <u>had</u> short bursts of enthusiasm, where she spilled swatches and drawings from her purse and talked about leather and velvet, but then her modelling engagements picked up again and she would forget all about it.

Had is ... form used to denote ...

30. 'I will wait till she gives permission, though, I promise.'

Gives is ... form used to denote ...

31. 'Has anything been heard of Jerry?'

Has been heard is ... form used to denote ...

32. Just touching his shoulder, she <u>went back</u> to the bed and <u>drew up</u> the one hard wooden chair.

Went back and drew up are ... forms used to denote ...

33. We were steering our trolley to the fresh meat counter when an old man with a solitary tin of cat food in his wonky wire basket collided with us.

Collided is ... form used to denote ...

34. The last words were delivered at a shout.

Were delivered is ... form used to denote ...

35. I wish I'd known then what I know now, about what he had done.

Had done is ... form used to denote ...

36. Malfoy stepped forwards, glancing around quickly to check that he and Dumbledore were alone. His eyes fell upon the second broom.

Fell is ... form used to denote ...

37. Harry, who <u>was shaking</u> all over, thought for a moment that Dumbledore might not be able to climb into the boat.

Was shaking is ... form used to denote ...

38. 'His sidekick was Drew Kerber, who, after his exemplary work in the Drumm case, <u>had been promoted</u> to chief detective, Slone PD, a position he still proudly held.'

Had been promoted is ... form used to denote ...

39. 'I think you'<u>re</u> still <u>lying</u>. You're wishing for stuff that makes you look good.'

Are lying is ... form used to denote ...

40. 'I'd like to think you had one already, even before we split up. And, as I <u>have been trying</u> to explain to you, I'm not sure I do have a life.'

Have been trying is ... form used to denote ...

LEVEL 3

Try to provide your perfect commentary.

Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) the tense;
- 2) describe what that is it used to denote;
- 3) in case the form is *passive*, you say that the subject *is acted upon*.
- 41. 'Stop it!' she said. People were staring at them.
- 42. 'The Dark Lord will return, and Harry Potter will be in terrible danger when he does.'
- 43. At Sunset and Fairfax he <u>bought</u> an evening paper and <u>pulled over</u> to the kerb to look through it.

- 44. 'Well, Clare can't and won't. They'll make a great mistake if they <u>try</u> to force her.'
- 45. Harry remembered the few weeks when they <u>had not been talking</u> to each other in the third year; he had not enjoyed trying to bridge the distance between them.
- 46. Harry felt Dumbledore's hand close over his arm again and moments later, they <u>were standing</u> together on almost the same spot, but there was no snow building on the window ledge, and Dumbledore's hand was blackened and dead-looking once more.
- 47. Once again, physicists believe the physical world <u>has been explained</u>, and that no further revolutions lie ahead.
- 48. 'And to drink?' a waitress asked, standing over them with a pad and pencil. Pauline hadn't realized she was actually placing an order.
- 49. 'Just tomato juice for me,' Dun said. Pauline said, 'Oh. <u>Are</u> you <u>not having</u> a cocktail?'
- 50. In those days, paperbacks <u>came</u> in their traditional liveries: orange Penguins for fiction, blue Pelicans for non-fiction.
- 51. 'He and Professor Trelawney are dividing classes between them this year,' said Professor McGonagall. 'The sixth year <u>is being taken</u> by Professor Trelawney.'
- 52. This was later that afternoon, when the two men <u>were cooking</u> dinner in the kitchen.
- 53. 'Why didn't you tell me you were getting out today? And why was she with you?'
- 54. Three times he <u>walked</u> past the door; then, his heart pounding with excitement, he <u>opened</u> his eyes and <u>faced</u> it—but he was still looking at a stretch of mundanely blank wall.
- 55. 'Dobby <u>has not slept</u> for a week, Harry Potter!" said Dobby proudly, swaying where he stood.
- 56. Harry watched her go, feeling slightly disgruntled. Once the door to the girls' dormitories had closed behind her he rounded on Ron. 'What <u>d</u>'you <u>think</u>?'
- 57. Ron's was the only occupied bed. Harry, Hermione, and Ginny were sitting around him; they <u>had spent</u> all day waiting outside the double doors, trying to see inside whenever somebody went in or out.
 - 58. 'Harry Potter?' said the girl. 'I <u>was asked</u> to give you this.'
- 59. 'You'll need all the luck you can get if Dumbledore <u>takes</u> you along with him.'
- 60. Work <u>is</u> far easier than family. It is easier to feel like you are some kind of successful human being at work.

Key to Tenses Commentary

- 1. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before a moment in the past
 - 2. the Past Simple Tense, succession of past events
- 3. the Present Perfect Continuous Tense, action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now
- 4. the Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 5. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before a moment in the past
 - 6. the Past Simple Tense, succession of past events
- 7. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before a moment in the past, is acted upon
- 8. the Present Perfect Tense form, past action connected in its result with the present
 - 9. the Present Simple Tense, adverbial clause of condition, future action
 - 10. the Past Simple Tense, single past event
 - 11. the Past Simple Tense, habitual past state
- 12. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before another past action
 - 13. the Present Simple Tense, regular activity
 - 14. the Past Simple Tense, habitual past action
 - 15. the Past Simple Tense, single past event
 - 16. the Past Simple Tense, single past event, is acted upon
- 17. the Past Simple Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past, is acted upon
 - 18. the Past Simple Tense, succession of past events
 - 19. the Past Simple Tense, single past event
- 20. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
 - 21. the Present Continuous Tense, an intended future action
- 22. the Past Perfect Tense, a past action of a certain duration completed before another past action
- 23. the Past Simple Passive Tense, a single past event, the subject was acted upon
- 24. the Present Perfect Continuous Tense, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and has just stopped with visible present results
- 25. the Present Simple Tense, a future action in a subordinate clause of condition
- 26. the Present Continuous Tense, an action in progress during a definite period of time in the past
- 27. the Present Perfect Tense, an action completed in the past but connected in its result with the present
 - 28. the Present Continuous Tense, an intended future action
 - 29. the Past Simple Tense, repeated past states

- 30. the Present Simple Tense, a future action in a subordinate clause of time
- 31. the Present Perfect Passive Tense, an action completed in the past but connected in its result with the present, the subject was acted upon
 - 32. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
 - 33. the Past Simple Tense, a single past event
- 34. the Past Simple Passive Tense, a single past event, the subject was acted upon
- 35. the Past Perfect Tense, a past action completed before another past action or before a moment in the past
 - 36. the Past Simple Tense, a single past event
- 37. the Past Continuous Tense, an action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 38. the Past Perfect Passive Tense, a past action completed before another past action or before a moment in the past, the subject was acted upon
- 39. the Present Continuous Tense, an action in progress happening at moment of speaking
- 40. the Present Perfect Tense, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now
- 41. the Past Continuous Tense, an action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 42. the Present Simple Tense, a future action in a subordinate clause of time
 - 43. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
- 44. the Present Simple Tense, a future action in a subordinate clause of condition
- 45. the Past Perfect Tense, a past action of a certain duration completed before another past action
- 46. the Past Continuous Tense, an action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 47. the Present Perfect Passive Tense, an action completed in the past but connected in its result with the present, the subject was acted upon
- 48. the Past Perfect Tense, a past action completed before another past action or before a moment in the past
 - 49. the Present Continuous Tense, an intended future action
 - 50. the Past Simple Tense, a habitual past action
- 51. the Present Continuous Passive Tense, an intended future action OR a planned future action, the subject is acted upon
- 52. the Past Continuous Tense, an action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 53. the Past Continuous Tense, a planned future action after the Past Simple Tense in the main clause according to the rules of the sequence of tenses
 - 54. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
- 55. the Present Perfect Tense, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now

- 56. the Present Simple Tense, a present action happening at the moment of speaking (a stative verb)
- 57. the Past Perfect Tense, a past action completed before another past action or before a moment in the past
- 58. the Past Simple Passive Tense, a single past event, the subject was acted upon
- 59. the Present Simple Tense, a future action in a subordinate clause of condition
 - 60. the Present Simple Tense, a generalization

TRANSLATION ON THE TENSES

LEVEL 1

1. Мы **работали 3 часа** к тому моменту, **когда** нас **позвали** попить кофе.

a past durable action completed before another past action, the second subject is acted upon

- **2. Если пойдет** снег, мы **вернемся** домой за санками. two future actions, the first is in an adverbial clause of condition
- 3. Мою машину **отремонтируют** κ субботе. a future action completed before a moment in the future, the subject is acted upon
- 4. Джейн **пожаловалась**, что **забыла** зонт дома. sequence of tenses
- 5. **Когда** мы **пришли** домой, стол уже **накрыли**. two past actions, the second was completed before the first one
- 6. **He успел** я **дойти** до угла, **как услышал** чьи-то шаги. use inversion, two past actions, the first before the second one
- 7. Он **сказал**, что **будет ждать** меня, **даже если** я сильно **опоздаю**. *sequence of tenses*
- 8. Она **была** очень уставшей. Она **готовила** больше трех часов. a past state which the result of a prior past durable action
- 9. Он **понял**, почему его **не позвали** на вечеринку. *sequence of tenses*
- 10. **Как долго** они **обсуждают** этот проект? an action that began in the past, lasted till the moment of speaking and is still going on

- 11. **Когда** я **проснулся**, дождь уже **прекратился** и ярко **светило** солнце. past actions, the second was completed before the first, the third is durable
- 12. Он **признался**, что **потерял** телефон. sequence of tenses
- 13. **K** 2025 году я уже **дострою** этот дом. a future action completed before a moment in the future
- 14. Я всегда интересовался спортом. А вы как долго играете в теннис? actions that began in the past and lasted up till the moment of speaking
- 15. **Если** ты **не перестанешь** дразнить собаку, она тебя **укусит**. *two future actions, the first is in an adverbial clause of condition*
- 16. **C тех пор** как я его **знаю**, он **всегда паркуется** возле моего дома. two actions that started at some point in the past and lasted up till the moment of speaking
- 17. Мой сын **поступил** в вуз! Я никогда раньше **не испытывал** такой радости.

two past actions connected in their results with the moment of speaking

- 18. Что там **сейчас обсуждается**? an action in progress taking place at the moment of speaking, the subject is acted upon
- 19. Он **спроси**л, почему все **смеются**. *sequence of tenses*
- 20. Он **звонит** мне каждый день **c** декабря. a repeated action that started at some point in the past and lasted up till the moment of speaking
- 21. Эту шутку сто раз **рассказывали**. an action completed several times by the moment of speaking, the subject is acted upon
- 22. **Едва** мы **тронулись** в путь, **как** что-то **случилось** с колесом. use inversion, two past actions, the first before the second one
- 23. **Пока** мы **обсуждали** рецепты, Джон **разбил** чашку. two past actions, the first is durable, the second interrupted the first one
- 24. Кого **сейчас оперируют**? an action taking place at the moment of speaking, the subject is acted upon
- 25. Эту сказку **часто читают** детям **в последнее время**. a repeated action that began in the past and repeated many times up till now

- 26. Мы **зна**л**и**, что она **не вернется**. *sequence of tenses*
- 27. Он уже **дважды был** у врача, но болезнь **не диагностировали**. two actions completed by the moment of speaking, the second subject is acted upon
- 28. Она **была** очень усталой. Она **переводила** сказки целый день. a past state preceded by a prior durable action
- 29. **К моменту, когда пошел** снег, мы уже **добрались** домой. a past action preceded by a prior completed action
- 30. Наш сосед очень **изменился**, он **стал** намного более дружелюбным. *two past actions connected with the present*

LEVEL 2

- 31. Я учу это правило уже 2 часа.
- 32. Она вспомнила, что пообещала приготовить пирог.
- 33. Как только началось занятие, я забыл о головной боли.
- 34. Я **думаю**, что **к** 2030 году учёные **найдут** решение проблемы глобального потепления.
 - 35. Когда у меня появится новая информация, я дам вам знать.
 - 36. У тебя глаза красные. Ты плакала?
 - 37. В этом доме уже **давно** никто **не живет**.
 - 38. Я подозревал, что она просто забыла сказать, что я жду вас.
 - 39. Не успели мы съесть салат, как принесли кофе.
 - 40. Я почувствовал, что за мной наблюдают, и обернулся.
 - 41. Пока детям делали прививки, папа упал в обморок.
 - 42. Я не видела Джейн целую вечность.
 - 43. Его последний рассказ опубликовали в журнале.
 - 44. Не успел я зайти в дом, как дети радостно закричали.
- 45. Никто **не знает**, что **было сказано** при той встрече, но она **с тех пор** с ним **не разговаривает**.
 - 46. Он спросил меня, нравится ли мне песня, которую он включил.
- 47. Она **три года занималась** танцами, **прежде чем приняла участие** в первом конкурсе.
 - 48. Когда они вернутся завтра домой, я буду красить пол на кухне.
- 49. Вопрос, который **обсуждался в тот момент, когда** я **зашел** в комнату, **касался** школы.
 - 50. Когда мы зашли в магазин, там обсуждались новые цены на кофе.

- 51. Я всегда любил грамматику.
- 52. Если ему скажут, что она его бросила, его сердце будет разбито.
- 53. Мы живем здесь уже три года и познакомились со всеми соседями.
- 54. К пятнице я докрашу спальню.
- 55. Его уволили из компании, в которой он проработал 10 лет.
- 56. Если его отпуск одобрят, он поедет рыбачить.
- 57. **Не успел** я **зайти** в дом, **как** соседи **начали** обсуждать мою новую машину.
 - 58. Когда начался дождь, я вспомнила, что потеряла свой зонт.
 - 59. Он совсем не изменился с тех пор, как я последний раз видел его.
 - 60. Когда мы придем домой, дети будут уже спать.

Key to Translation on the Tenses

- 1. We had been working for three hours when we were called to have coffee.
 - 2. If it starts snowing, we shall/will return home to take the sled.
 - 3. My car will have been repaired by Saturday.
 - 4. Jane complained that she had forgotten her umbrella at home.
 - 5. When we came home the table had been laid already.
- 6. Hardly had I reached the corner when I heard someone's footsteps. OR No sooner had I reached the corner than I heard someone's footsteps.
 - 7. He said he would be waiting for me even if I were awfully late.
 - 8. She was tired. She had been cooking for more than three hours.
 - 9. He understood why he hadn't been invited to the party.
 - 10. How long have they been discussing this project?
- 11. When I woke up it had already stopped raining and the sun was shining brightly.
 - 12. He confessed that he had lost his cell phone.
 - 13. I will have built this house by 2025.
- 14. I have always been interested in sports. How long have you been playing tennis?
 - 15. If you do not stop teasing the dog it will bite you.
 - 16. Since I have known him, he has always parked near my house.
 - 17. My son has entered University! I have never felt that happy before!
 - 18. What is being discussed there now?
 - 19. He asked why everybody was laughing.
 - 20. He has been calling me every day since December.
 - 21. This joke has been told a hundred times.
- 22. Hardly had we started driving when something happened to the tyre. OR No sooner had we started driving than something happened to the tyre.
 - 23. While we were discussing recipes John broke a cup.
 - 24. Who is being operated on?
 - 25. This fairytale has often been read to kids lately.

- 26. We knew that she wouldn't return.
- 27. He has seen the doctor two times, but the disease hasn't been diagnosed.
 - 28. She was very tired. She had been translating fairytales all day long.
 - 29. By the moment it **started** snowing we **had** already **reached** home.
 - 30. Our neighbour has changed a lot, he has become much more friendly.
 - 31. I have been learning this rule for two hours already.
 - 32. She **remembered** that she **had promised** to bake a pie.
- 33. Hardly had the class started when I forgot I had a headache. OR No sooner had the class started than I forgot I had a headache.
- 34. I think that **by** 2030 scientists **will have found** a solution to the problem of global warming.
 - 35. When I have new information, I will let you know.
 - 36. You have red eyes. Have you been crying?
- 37. Nobody has been living/has lived in this house for a long time. OR This house hasn't been lived in for a long time.
- 38. I suspected that she had simply forgotten to tell that I was waiting for you.
- 39. Hardly had we eaten salad when coffee was brought. OR No sooner had we eaten salad than coffee was brought.
 - 40. I felt I was being watched and turned round.
 - 41. While the kids were being vaccinated their dad lost consciousness.
 - 42. I haven't seen Jane for ages.
 - 43. His last story has been published in a magazine.
- 44. Hardly had I entered the house when the children started shouting with joy. OR No sooner had I entered the house when the children started shouting with joy.
- 45. Nobody **knows** what **was said** at that meeting, but she **hasn't been talking** to him since then.
 - 46. He asked me if/whether I liked the song he had switched on.
- 47. She had been going in for dancing for three years before she took part in the first competition.
- 48. When they **come** back home tomorrow, I **will be painting** the floor in the kitchen.
- 49. The question that was being discussed when I entered the room was about school.
- 50. When we **entered** the store new coffee prices **were being discussed** there.
 - 51. I have always loved Grammar.
 - 52. If he is told that she has left him his heart will be broken.
- 53. We have been living/have lived here for three years and have become acquainted with all the neighbours.
 - 54. I will have painted the bedroom by Friday.
- 55. He had been fired from the company he had worked for/had been working for 10 years.
 - 56. If his leave is approved, he will go fishing.

- 57. Hardly had I entered the house when my neighbours started discussing my new car. OR No sooner had I entered the house than my neighbours started discussing my new car.
 - 58. When it started raining, I remembered that I had lost my umbrella.
 - 59. He hasn't changed much since I last saw him.
 - 60. When we come home, the kids will be asleep.

OBLIQUE MOODS COMMENTARY

LEVEL 1

1. The classroom clock showed five to six and he said that **it was time** they went out for a drink.

Went out is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after it was time in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of the ... (compound verbal modal predicate/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the finite verb was.

2. Howard sank into a corner **as though** he <u>were</u> for the time being safe.

Were is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative clause/adverbial clause of comparison) of a complex sentence after **as though** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of the ... (compound verbal modal predicate/Past Simple Tense /Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the finite verb **sank**.

3. Then Jack **demanded** he <u>light</u> the pudding-and how could he not eat pudding after that?

light is ... (Subjunctive I/the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion/fear) in the main clause.

4. He **feared lest** this new case should take a long time to be solved.

Should take is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) form of the verb to take which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after ... (emotion/fear/modal meaning) in the ... (main/predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause and the conjunction lest. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of the (compound verbal modal predicate/Suppositional Mood/Conditional Mood) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to/posterior to) the finite verb feared.

- 5. If you mean Aunt Thelma, I **suggest** you <u>wait</u> until she says you can.
- wait is ... (Subjunctive I/the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion/fear) in the main clause.
- 6. Harry sat there feeling mutinous. How **would** it **be if** he <u>refused</u> to permit the change of subject, if he insisted upon arguing the case against Malfoy?

Refused is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood/Subjunctive II/Subjunctive I) form of the verb to refuse which is used in the ... (adverbial/nominal/attributive/attributive-appositive) clause of ... (concession/condition) of a complex sentence where ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood/Subjunctive II/Subjunctive I/a compound verbal modal predicate) is used in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of (the Past Simple Tense/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood/Subjunctive II/Subjunctive I) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (prior/posterior) to sat.

7. The rules of the New Haven Youth League **required** that each kid <u>play</u> at least ten minutes in each game.

Play is ... (Subjunctive I/the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion/fear) in the main clause.

8. When Baxter spoke, he did so softly and slowly and he gazed across the rivers, **as if** his tongue were working but his mind were engaged elsewhere.

Were working is ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II continuous/the Conditional Mood continuous) form of the verb to work which is used in the ... (predicative clause/adverbial clause of comparison) of a complex sentence after as if in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of the ... (Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II continuous/Conditional Mood continuous) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the finite verb gazed.

9. Yes, Uncle Wally again. God <u>bless</u> him.

bless is ... (Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive I/Subjunctive II/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) form which is used in a ... (complex/simple) sentence in a formulaic expression of ... (wish/concession).

10. Bill <u>would have known</u> how to reply to this, **but** Holly didn't, so she took out her notebook and went to the matter at hand.

Would have known is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II/the Conditional Mood) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/main/object/subject) of a complex sentence ... (with implied condition/to sound polite). The ... (non-perfect/perfect)

form of the ... (compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II/Conditional Mood) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (posterior/prior) to the finite verb didn't (know) and took.

11. 'Your Aunt **suggests** that young Croom <u>should go</u> gold-digging, come back rich, and marry Clare.'

Should go is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) form which is used (predicative/attributive/object/subject) of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion/fear) in the main clause. The ... (nonperfect/perfect) (compound form of the verbal predicate/Suppositional Mood/Conditional Mood) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (posterior/prior) to the finite verb suggests.

12. 'You'd better open those two first.'

Had better open is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form/the Conditional Mood form) which consists of the modal expression of ... (advice/preference/wish/concession) had better used in its ... (Subjunctive II/Past Simple Tense/Past Perfect Tense) form and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form/Subjunctive I form) open. The action is (posterior/prior) to the moment of speaking.

13. She looked, in fact, **as if** she were studying another work of art.

Were studying is ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II continuous/the Conditional Mood continuous) form of the verb to study which is used in the ... (predicative clause/adverbial clause of comparison) of a complex sentence after as if in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of the ... (Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II continuous/Conditional Mood continuous) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the finite verb looked.

14. 'I **wish** I <u>could say</u>,' I tell her in tones of regret. 'It's a bit of a secret. Sorry about that.'

Could say is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its ... (Subjunctive II/Past Simple Tense) form to denote ... (permission/lack of general possibility/prohibition) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form/Subjunctive I form) **say** indication that the action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) **wish**. It is used in the ... (subject/object/predicative/attributive) clause of a complex sentence after **wish** in the main clause.

15. But it's far more than shyness. Hiroko has that very Japanese terror of doing something imperfectly. She <u>would</u> much <u>rather not do</u> it at all.

Would rather not do is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form/the Conditional Mood form) which consists of the modal expression of ... (advice/preference/wish/concession) would

rather used in its ... (Subjunctive II/Past Simple Tense/Past Perfect Tense) form and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form/Subjunctive I form) not do. The action is (simultaneous with/prior to) the moment of speaking.

16. She rarely left her loft, for any reason, so the **suggestion** that they <u>meet</u> for coffee or lunch was always dismissed.

Meet is ... (Subjunctive I/the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive-appositive/object/attributive/subject) clause of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion/fear) in the main clause.

17. He left the message on her recorder as he was hustling out of town and **wished** she <u>didn't return</u> the call anytime soon.

Didn't return is ... (Subjunctive II/the Past Simple Tense/a compound verbal modal predicate) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/main/object/subject) of a complex sentence after **wished** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (Subjunctive II/the Past Simple Tense/the compound verbal modal predicate) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (posterior/prior) to **wished**.

18. Though it was growing late, he **suggested** they go and <u>look</u> at the maze.

Go and **look** are ... (Subjunctive I/the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) forms which are used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion/fear) in the main clause.

19. 'Get lost?' she said, **wishing** she'<u>d had</u> the courage to abandon the interrogative inflection.

Had had is ... (Subjunctive II/the Past Perfect Tense/a compound verbal modal predicate) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/main/object/subject) of a complex sentence after wishing in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (Subjunctive II/the Past Perfect Tense/the compound verbal modal predicate) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (posterior/prior) to said.

20. He asked Clare whether she and her sister would dine with him, 'On Saturday-here, or at the Cafe Royal?' 'Here would be more original.'

Would be is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II/the Conditional Mood) form which is used in the ... (simple/complex) sentence ... (with implied condition/to sound polite). The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of the ... (compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II/Conditional Mood) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (posterior/prior) to the moment of speaking.

LEVEL 2

21. 'And I wish he weren't in London.'

Weren't is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after **wish** in the ... clause. The ... action is ... **wish**.

22. In the meantime, I **suggest** we all go to bed and get a good night's rest.

Go is ... form which is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after ... in the main clause.

23. **It's time** I consulted a psychologist regarding my problem.

Consulted is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... after *it's time*. The action is ... *is*.

24. If I hadn't done that I wouldn't have lost my job.

Wouldn't have lost is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence with ... Time reference of the ... action is to the ...

25. Though his feet suddenly felt like bricks and his knees were weak, Kyle managed to trudge on **as if** nothing <u>were</u> wrong.

Were is ... in its ... form used in the ... of a ... sentence after the conjunction as if. The ... action is ... **managed**.

26. 'I almost wish we'd had kids, so I could turn them against him.'

Had had is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after *wish* in the ... clause. The ... action is ... *wish*.

27. He would rather have devoted his mental energy to Julie, the person.

Would rather have devoted is a ... which consists of the ... expression of ... **would rather** in ... form and the ... **have devoted** referring the action to the ...

28. She **demands** that I tell her where I went.

Tell is ... form which is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after ... in the main clause.

29. I **wish** I'<u>d known</u> then what I know now, about what he had done. I would have pulled him out of my cab.

Had known is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after *wish* in the ... clause. The ... action is ... *wish*.

30. 'So!' resumes Suze, her eyes sparkling. 'Jess **suggested** we <u>should make</u> things.'

Should make is ... in its ... form which is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after ... in the main clause. The ... action is ... **suggested**.

31. She offered him some coins. 'Right money,' he said, 'right money. No change will be given. God <u>help</u> us.'

Help is ... used in a ... sentence in a ... expression of ...

32. I wish I'd known then what I know now, about what he had done. I <u>would</u> have pulled him out of my cab.

Would have pulled is ... in its ... form used in a ... with ... Time reference of the ... action is to the ...

33. 'Mr Davidson **wishes** he <u>could get</u> back to his work,' said his wife, with an anxious glance at him.

Could get is a ... which consists of the ... **could** used in its ... form to ... and the ... **get** indicating that the action is ... **wishes**. It is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after in the ... clause.

34. Oh God, I **wish** they <u>hadn't</u> all <u>made</u> baby wipes.

Hadn't made is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after *wish* in the ... clause. The ... action is ... *wish*.

35. She looked at Dun to see if he would **suggest** they <u>get</u> a bottle, and when he didn't, she told the waitress, 'The house brand will be fine.'

Get is ... form which is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after ... in the main clause.

36. 'We've all got loved ones, anyway,' said Martin. 'And our loved ones would rather we were happy than sad.'

Were is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after would rather in the ... clause. The ... action is ... the moment of speaking.

37. If you're coming from New York, you'<u>d better get</u> to Raleigh the night before.

Had better get is a ... which consists of the ... of ... had better used in its ... form and the ... get. The action is ... the moment of speaking.

38. **If only** there <u>was</u> something he could do to make Ron pull himself together...

Was is ... in its ... form used in the main clause beginning with ... The ... action is ... the moment of speaking.

39. 'I wish you would try and eat a little something.'

Would try and **eat** is a ... which consists of the ... **would** used in its ... form in the meaning of ... and the ... **try** and **eat**. **hand**. **Would try** and **eat** is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after **wish** in the main clause. The action is ... **wish**.

40. 'It's time you <u>learnt</u> some respect!'

Learnt is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... after *it's time*. The action is ... is.

LEVEL 3

Try to provide your perfect commentary.

Remember, that you are to mention:

1) the *mood* and its morphological *form*,

- 2) the *syntactic structure* the mood is used in,
- 3) the *lexical environment* of the mood,
- 4) *time reference* (also explain *continuous* and *passive* forms).
- 41. He <u>would have had</u> a far happier, far more successful career **if** he had been writing for the front pages rather than the back pages.
 - 42. If he <u>were</u> the master of the Deathly Hallows, **would** he **be** safe?
- 43. She made slamming signals with her hand which **suggested** that Francine should put the phone down.
 - 44. It looks as if we'd missed something.
 - 45. I **suggest** you <u>try</u> again.
- 46. The loud crash brought him out of his reverie; hurrying from the scene **lest** Filch <u>turn up</u>, he dashed down the marble staircase and along the passageway below.
 - 47. Steve thought **it was time** he <u>had</u> a good-night cup of coffee.
- 48. Searchlight beams probed the cloudless sky **as if** they <u>were searching</u> for bombing-planes.
- 49. Kate stepped in from the backyard with her bucket of gardening tools, and her father beamed at her **as if** she'd just won a Nobel Prize.
 - 50. I **would rather** they <u>had had</u> some idea what was to come.
- 51. <u>Had</u> he <u>not known</u> that it was he who stood there, he would have wondered who was wearing his glasses.
- 52. 'He gets more visitors than anyone,' she said, and then, to the old man, raising her voice **as though** he <u>were</u> deaf or simple or both, 'He's very popular.'
 - 53. But **if** he hadn't broken her heart, my wife and I <u>wouldn't be</u> together.
- 54. The lone black councilman, Mr Varner, began by demanding that Kerber <u>be fired</u> immediately and that the city unanimously adopt a resolution condemning itself for its handling of the Donte Drumm affair.
- 55. <u>Should</u> you <u>feel</u> that a family member, colleague, friend, or neighbour is acting in a strange manner, contact the Magical Law Enforcement Squad at once.
- 56. The Giver's face took on a solemn look. 'I **wish** they <u>wouldn't do</u> that,' he said quietly, almost to himself.
- 57. And Jess, God <u>love</u> her... We'd only known her for half an hour, but you could tell that this was a girl who had problems.
 - 58. 'I wish I hadn't told you that.'
- 59. Pat wandered back to the living room, and my mum smiled with sadness and happiness all at once, patting my shoulder. 'Your dad <u>would be</u> proud of you.'
- 60. She placed her finger on the doorbell **as if** she <u>were buttonholing</u> the secret of the universe.

Key to Oblique Moods Commentary

- 1. Subjunctive II, attributive, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, simultaneous with
- 2. Subjunctive II, adverbial clause of comparison, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, simultaneous with
 - 3. Subjunctive I, object, modal meaning
- 4. the Suppositional Mood, object, fear, main, non-perfect, Suppositional Mood, problematic, posterior to
 - 5. Subjunctive I, object, modal meaning
- 6. Subjunctive II, adverbial, condition, the Conditional Mood, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, posterior
 - 7. Subjunctive I, object, modal meaning
- 8. Subjunctive II continuous, adverbial clause of comparison, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, simultaneous with
 - 9. Subjunctive I, simple, wish
- 10. the Conditional Mood, main, with implied condition, perfect, Conditional Mood, unreal, prior
- 11. the Suppositional Mood, object, modal meaning, non-perfect, Suppositional Mood, problematic, posterior
- 12. a compound verbal modal predicate, advice, Subjunctive II, non-perfect common infinitive active, posterior
- 13. Subjunctive II continuous, predicative clause, non-perfect, Subjunctive II continuous, simultaneous with
- 14. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II, lack of general possibility, non-perfect common infinitive active, simultaneous with, object
- 15. a compound verbal modal predicate, preference, Subjunctive II, non-perfect common infinitive active, simultaneous with
 - 16. Subjunctive I, attributive-appositive, modal meaning
 - 17. Subjunctive II, object, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, posterior
 - 18. Subjunctive I, object, modal meaning
 - 19. Subjunctive II, object, perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, prior
- 20. the Conditional Mood, simple, with implied condition, non-perfect, Conditional Mood, unreal, posterior
- 21. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... simultaneous with/posterior to ...
 - 22. ... Subjunctive I ... object ... complex ... modal meaning
- 23. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... attributive ... complex ... simultaneous with ...
- 24. ... the Conditional Mood ... perfect ... main ... complex ... an adverbial clause of unreal condition ... unreal ... past.
- 25. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... adverbial clause of comparison ... complex ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...
- 26. ... Subjunctive II ... perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... prior to ...
- 27. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal ... preference ... Subjunctive II ... perfect common infinitive active ... past.
 - 28. ... Subjunctive I ... object ... complex ... modal meaning

- 29. ... Subjunctive II ... perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... prior to ...
- 30. ... the Suppositional Mood ... non-perfect ... object ... complex ... modal meaning ... problematic ... posterior to ...
 - 31. ... Subjunctive I ... simple ... formulaic ... wish.
- 32. ... the Conditional Mood ... perfect ... simple sentence ... implied condition ... unreal ... past.
- 33. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II ... denote lack of general possibility ... non-perfect common infinitive active ... simultaneous with ... object ... complex ... wish/wishes ... main ...
- 34. ... Subjunctive II ... perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... prior to ...
 - 35. ... Subjunctive I ... object ... complex ... modal meaning
- 36. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... simultaneous with/posterior to ...
- 37. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal expression ... advice ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect common infinitive active ... simultaneous with/posterior to ...
- 38. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... if only ... unreal ... simultaneous with/posterior to ...
- 39. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II ... annoyance ... non-perfect common infinitives active ... object ... complex ... posterior to ...
- 40. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... attributive ... complex ... simultaneous with ...
- 41. the Conditional Mood perfect, in the main clause of a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition, prior to the moment of speaking
- 42. Subjunctive II non-perfect, in an adverbial clause of unreal condition with the Conditional Mood in the main clause, simultaneous with the moment of speaking
- 43. the Suppositional Mood non-perfect, in an object clause after modal meaning, posterior to **suggested**
- 44. Subjunctive II perfect, in a predicative clause after **as if**, prior to **looks**
 - 45. Subjunctive I, in an object clause after modal meaning
 - 46. Subjunctive I, in an adverbial clause of purpose after lest
- 47. Subjunctive II non-perfect, in an attributive-appositive clause after **it was time**, simultaneous with **was**
- 48. Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous, in an adverbial clause of comparison after **as if**, simultaneous with **probed**, the action is durable
- 49. Subjunctive II perfect, in an adverbial clause of comparison after **as if**, prior to **beamed**
- 50. Subjunctive II perfect, in an object clause after **would rather**, prior to the moment of speaking

- 51. Subjunctive II perfect, in an adverbial clause of unreal condition, in the main clause the Conditional Mood is used, prior to the moment of speaking
- 52. Subjunctive II non-perfect, in an adverbial clause of comparison after **as though**, simultaneous with **said**
- 53. the Conditional Mood non-perfect, in the main clause of a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition, prior to the moment of speaking
- 54. Subjunctive I passive, in an object clause after modal meaning, the subject is acted upon
- 55. The Suppositional Mood non-perfect, in an adverbial clause of problematic condition, in the main clause the Imperative Mood is used, posterior to the moment of speaking
- 56. a compound verbal modal predicate, the modal verb **would** in its Subjunctive II form to denote annoyance and a non-perfect common infinitive active, in an object clause after **wish**, posterior to **wish**
 - 57. Subjunctive I, a formulaic expression of wish
 - 58. Subjunctive II perfect, in an object clause after wish, prior to wish
- 59. the Conditional Mood non-perfect, in a simple sentence with implied condition, simultaneous with the moment of speaking
- 60. Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous, in an adverbial clause of comparison after **as if**, simultaneous with **placed**, the action is durable

TRANSLATION ON THE OBLIQUE MOODS

LEVEL 1

- 1. Я **настаиваю**, чтобы его прооперировали сегодня же. an object clause after modal meaning in the main clause
- 2. **Будь** я на твоем месте, я **бы** не стал этого делать вчера. a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference
- 3. Жаль, что мне не сообщили об изменении в расписании, я опоздал на лекцию.

an object clause after 'wish' in the main clause

- 4. Вы **бы** сегодня хорошо себя чувствовали, **если бы** вчера легли раньше спать.
 - a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference
 - 5. Мы **боялись**, **как бы не** сломать дверь. an object clause after fear in the main clause
 - 6. Я **настаиваю**, чтобы его осмотрел врач. an object clause after modal meaning in the main clause

- 7. Пора тебе научиться разговаривать с соседями.
- an attributive clause after 'it's time'
- 8. **Жаль**, что они отменили свой заказ, мы могли **бы** хорошо заработать.

an object clause after 'wish' in the main clause and unreal conditional possibility

- 9. У вас такой вид, как будто вы не помните, как вас зовут.
- a clause after 'as if'
- 10. Очень странно, что он уехал так скоро.
- a subject clause after emotion in the main clause
- 11. Как бы я хотел, чтобы этот семестр уже закончился.
- an object clause after 'wish' in the main clause
- 12. Пол в комнате такой грязный, **как будто** его не подметали несколько дней.

a clause after 'as if', pay attention to time reference

13. Ах, если бы кто-нибудь поверил мне тогда!

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in sentences expressing regret

- 14. Боже упаси советовать тебе что-либо.
- a formulaic expression of wish
- 15. Я **бы** не переживал сейчас так, **если бы** весь год прилежно занимался.
 - a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference
 - 16. Совет потребовал, чтобы директор продолжил переговоры.
 - an object clause after modal meaning in the main clause
- 17. **Если бы** он прилагал усилия в школе, он **мог бы** сейчас выбирать между разными специальностями.
 - a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference
 - 18. Жаль, что нам не прислали результаты теста.
 - an object clause after 'wish' in the main clause
- 19. Крайне **важно**, чтобы он сразу переслал нам результаты своих анализов.
 - a subject clause after modal meaning in the main clause
- 20. Тебе **лучше бы** пойти погулять. Я **бы**, **пожалуй**, остался дома и почитал книгу.
 - a modal expression of advice, a modal expression of preference in a simple sentence

LEVEL 2

21. У меня в мыслях не было жульничать!

a formulaic expression

22. Он потребовал, чтобы с ним немедленно расплатились.

after modal meaning

23. **Если бы** они были счастливы, они **бы** не ссорились все время. *unreal actions*

24. **Требование** соседей заключалось в том, чтобы Джон не шумел.

after modal meaning

25. Жаль, что он уже отправил открытку.

after 'wish'

- 26. Я не стал бы пытаться отговорить тебя от участия.
- 27. **Если** он **вдруг** забудет позвонить, Мэри может не быть дома, когда мы придем.
 - 28. Боюсь, что он забудет выключить телевизор.

after fear

29. Ему давно пора уделил внимание своему здоровью.

'it's time'

30. Если бы не вы, я бы не вспомнил о пироге в духовке.

beginning with 'but for'

31. Жаль, что он не принял участие в обсуждении.

after 'wish'

32. Он жалел, что не взялся за учебу раньше.

after 'wish'

33. Если бы я получил эту работу, я бы купил себе кофеварку.

unreal actions

34. Удивительно, как это он выучил такой большой отрывок.

after emotion

35. Жаль, что вы не прислушались к его советам.

after 'wish'

36. **А что, если** он **вдруг** расскажет мою историю всем своим друзьям? *a problematic action*

37. Мы бы предпочли, чтобы вы показали нам желтую машину.

preference in a complex sentence

38. Я не стал **бы** вас беспокоить, **если бы** вопрос не был такой срочный. *unreal actions*

- 39. Да здравствуют жених и невеста!
- a formulaic expression
- 40. **Жаль**, что я не повторил все правила вчера. *after 'wish'*

LEVEL 3

- 41. Я **бы** купил эту книгу вчера, **если бы** увидел ее в магазине.
- 42. У меня и в мыслях нет утверждать, что она вам сказала неправду.
- 43. Желательно, чтобы он больше читал.
- 44. **Жаль**, что вы не рассказали ему все сразу, он **был бы** вам благодарен.
 - 45. Я бы предпочла, чтобы она добилась успеха в карьере.
 - 46. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты включил фильм на английском.
 - 47. Я сказал, что мне жаль, что за ним плохо ухаживали в больнице.
- 48. **Даже если бы** мы сходили в музей, все равно мне **бы** не понравилась эта экскурсия.
 - 49. Джейн заметила, что мне пора ложиться спать.
 - 50. Жаль, что фильм такой скучный.
 - 51. Врач предложил, чтобы пациент поехал на море.
 - 52. Ты **бы предпоче**л, чтобы я **дела**л твою работу?
 - 53. Жаль, что мы не купили того милого щенка.
 - 54. **Будь** я тогда с вами, я **бы** поддержал Джейн.
- 55. **Важно**, чтобы каждый человек относился к другим людям уважительно.
 - 56. Жаль, что у нас нет времени обсудить эту замечательную идею.
 - 57. **Будь что будет**, я попытаюсь устроиться на эту работу.
 - 58. Боюсь, как бы Джон не отложил поездку.
 - 59. Мы **бы предпочли**, чтобы ему поручили это задание.
 - 60. Если бы не ее трудолюбие и старание, она бы ничего не добилась.
 - 61. Мы **боялись**, **как бы** он **не** заболел.
 - 62. Жаль, что он не поплавал в Тихом океане.
 - 63. Ему кажется, словно его обманули. Но это не так.
 - 64. Если бы не дождь, мы бы пошли пешком сейчас.
 - 65. Жаль, что он не позвонил мне вечером.
 - 66. Я бы не увольнялся сейчас, если бы они повысили тогда зарплату.
 - 67. **Мне бы хотелось**, что ты содержал все свои вещи в порядке.

- 68. Боже упаси меня обсуждать с соседями свое здоровье!
- 69. Я сожалею, что подвел тебя вчера.
- 70. Если вдруг заскучаете, повторяйте грамматику.

Key to Translation on the Oblique Moods

- 1. I insist that he be operated on/should be operated on today.
- 2. If I were you I wouldn't have done it yesterday. (not Were I you...)
- 3. I wish I had been informed about the change in the timetable, I was late for the lecture.
- 4. You would feel/would be feeling better today if you had gone/had you gone to bed earlier yesterday.
 - 5. We were afraid lest we should break/break the door.
 - 6. I insist that he be examined/should be examined by the doctor.
 - 7. It is high time you learnt how to speak to neighbours.
- 8. I wish they hadn't cancelled their order, we could/might have earned quite a lot.
 - 9. You look as if you didn't remember your name.
 - 10. It is strange that he should have left so soon.
 - 11. I wish this semester were over.
- 12. The floor in the room is so dirty **as if** it **hadn't been swept** for several days.
 - 13. If only somebody had believed me then!
- 14. Heaven forbid that I should give you any advice! OR Far be it from me to give you any advice!
- 15. I wouldn't be so much worried now if I had been studying hard during the whole year.
- 16. The board **demanded** that the director **continue/should continue** negotiations.
- 17. If he had studied hard at school he could choose between different majors now.
 - 18. I wish we had been sent the results of the test.
- 19. It is of **vital importance** that he **should send/send** us the results of his tests.
- 20. You had better go for a walk. I would rather stay (at) home and read a book.
 - 21. Heaven forbid that I should cheat! OR Far be it from me to cheat!
 - 22. He demanded that he be paid off/should be paid off immediately.
- 23. If they were happy/Were they happy, they wouldn't be arguing all the time.
 - 24. The neighbours' demand was that John be/should be quiet.
 - 25. I wish he hadn't sent a postcard.
 - 26. I wouldn't try to talk you out of participating.
- 27. Should he forget to call/If he should forget to call, Mary may/might not be at home when we arrive.
 - 28. I fear lest he should forget to turn off the TV.

- 29. It is high time he paid attention to his health.
- 30. But for you I wouldn't have remembered that I left a pie in the oven.
- 31. I wish he had participated in the discussion.
- 32. He wished he had got down to studies earlier.
- 33. If I got this job I would buy a coffee maker. OR If I had got this job I would have bought a coffee maker.
- 34. It is amazing that he should have learnt such a big passage.
- 35. I wish you had listened to his advice.
- 36. And what if he should tell my story to all his friends?
- 37. We would rather you showed/had shown us a yellow car.
- 38. I wouldn't bother you if the question were not so urgent.
- 39. Long live the bride and groom!
- 40. I wish I had revised all the rules yesterday.
- 41. I would have bought this book yesterday if I had seen it on sale/had I seen it on sale.
- 42. Far be it from me to state that she lied to you.
- 43. It is advisable that he read/should read more.
- 44. I wish you had told him everything right then, he would have been grateful to you.
 - 45. I would rather she succeeded/had succeeded in her career.
 - 46. I wish you would turn on/you turned on a film in English.
 - 47. I said I wished he had been taken better care of in hospital.
- 48. Even if we had visited the museum, I still wouldn't have liked this excursion.
 - 49. Jane noticed that it was time I went to bed.
 - 50. I wish the film were not that boring.
 - 51. The doctor suggested that the patient go/should go to the sea.
 - 52. Would you rather I were doing your job?
 - 53. I wish we had bought that cute puppy.
 - 54. Were I there/If I were there with you, I would have supported Jane.
- 55. It is **important** that every person **treat/should treat** other people with respect.
 - 56. I wish we had time to discuss this wonderful idea.
 - 57. Come what may, I will try to get this job.
 - 58. I fear lest John should decide/decide to postpone the trip.
 - 59. We would rather he were given/had been given this task.
 - 60. But for her diligence and effort she wouldn't have achieved anything.
 - 61. We were afraid lest he should fall ill/fall ill.
 - 62. I wish he had swum in the Pacific Ocean.
 - 63. He feels as if he had been deceived. But it isn't so.
 - 64. But for the rain we would walk now.
 - 65. I wish he had called me yesterday.
- 66. I wouldn't be quitting now had they raised/if they had raised my salary then.
 - 67. I wish you would keep/kept your belongings in order.

- 68. Heaven forbid that I should discuss my health with neighbours. OR Far be it from me to discuss my health with neighbours.
 - 69. I wish I hadn't let you down yesterday.
 - 70. Should you feel bored/if you should feel bored, revise Grammar.

MODAL VERBS COMMENTARY

LEVEL 1

1. That evening, it worked better with Howard than anything I <u>could have</u> done.

Could have done is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb could used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (unreal (conditional) possibility/chances/probability) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) have done which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

2. Why <u>did</u> he <u>have to settle</u> in a Cambridge school?

Did have to settle is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form/the Present Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb did have to used in its ... (non-perfect form/Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (obligation coming from external authority/strong obligation/deduction) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form) settle. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

3. The third ticket was for Blair who was to marry Joey soon.

Was to marry is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb was to used in its ... (non-perfect form/Subjunctive II form/Past Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (a plan/strict order/certainty) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form) marry. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

4. 'Well, darling, shall we strap-hang on the Tube, or go a bust in a taxi?'

Shall strap-hang is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Future Simple Tense form/the Present Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb shall ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Future Simple Tense form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (suggestion/strict order/threat) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form) strap-hang. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

5. 'You found out where I go, didn't you?' she spits. 'You <u>must have spied</u> on me.'

Must have spied is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb must ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (strong obligation/chances/deduction/emphatic advice) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) have spied which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

6. I think he <u>might have been peeking</u> at me, like maybe he was thinking of trying something.

Might have been peeking is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb might used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (unreal (conditional) possibility/chances/probability/ certainty/deduction/emotional colouring) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect continuous infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form/Present Perfect Continuous Tense form) have been peeking which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

7. You know what they say, there are none so blind as those who will not see.

Will not see is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Future Simple Tense form/the Present Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb will not ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Future Simple Tense form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (probability/certainty/deduction/refusal to perform an action/strict order/threat) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form) see. Time reference is to the ... (past/present/future).

8. 'You're not going out dressed like that,' I told her. But I <u>needn't have</u> worried. My mum was going to see if she liked it before she bought any of the cowboy kit.

Needn't have worried is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Future Simple Tense form/the Present Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb needn't ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/ used in its Future Simple Tense form/ used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (absence of necessity/absence of necessity with an action performed though unnecessary/prohibition) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect common infinitive active/Present Simple worried. Tense form) have Time reference is the (past/present/future).

9. But of course he did – and how could he ever have thought he couldn't?

Could have thought is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb could used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (unreal (conditional) possibility/chances/probability/ certainty/deduction/doubt/ emotional colouring) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) have thought which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

10. There was a silence which should have been a contented silence, but it was tense.

Should have been is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb should ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (an unfulfilled past obligation/probability/emphatic advice) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) have been which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

11. Just give me a lift there, will you?

Will is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Future Simple Tense form/a modal verb/the Future Simple auxiliary verb) which consists of the modal verb will ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Future Simple Tense form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (refusal to perform an action/request/threat). Time reference is to the ... (past/present/future).

12. 'You don't own me,' said Francine. 'I can do what I want.'

Can do is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb can used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (general possibility/permission/request) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) do. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

13. In the maze, Agnes suspected cheating, for it <u>can't have been</u> a superior sense of intuition which had sent him darting away from her down one alley and then another until she had lost him.

Can't have been is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Simple Tense form/the Present Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb can't used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive Ш form) in the meaning of (possibility/emotional colouring/doubt/deduction) and the infinitive active/perfect common common active/Present Perfect Tense form) have been referring the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

14. Many of the employees involved were fired, but somehow, she <u>was able</u> to keep her job.

Was able to keep is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal expression was able to used in its ... (Past Simple Tense form/Present Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (ability/successful achievement/permission) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) keep. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

15. I wish they had had some idea what was to come.

Was to come is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb was to used in its ... (Past Simple Tense form/Present Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (a plan/strict order/destiny) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) come. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

16. Exceptions were allowed for players who had upset their coaches by skipping practice or violating other rules. In such cases, a coach <u>could file</u> a report before the game and inform the scorekeeper that so-and-so wouldn't play much, if at all, because of some infraction.

Could file is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Simple Tense form/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (general possibility/ability/permission) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) **file**. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

17. Visits with his mother were painful. If the meds were out of order, she would lie on the sofa with her eyes closed, unbathed, unkempt, often inconsolable in her gloom and misery.

Would lie is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Future Simple Tense form/the Conditional Mood form) which consists of the modal verb would used in its... (Subjunctive II form/Past Simple Tense form/Present Simple Tense form/Conditional Mood form) in the meaning of ... (refusal to perform an action/a habitual action/unreality) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/perfect common infinitive active/Present Perfect Tense form) lie. Time reference is to the ... (past/present/future).

18. She did not offer the pack to Holly, which was no surprise, given the price of smokes these days, but for which Holly was grateful, anyway. She <u>might have</u> taken one.

Might have taken is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb might ... (-/used in its Present Simple Tense form/used in its Past Simple Tense form/used in its Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (unreal

(conditional) possibility/chances/probability/ certainty/deduction/emotional colouring) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) have taken which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

19. 'You might have told me what you were doing, though. I was worried.'

Might have told is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb might used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) in the meaning of ... (unreality/criticism/chances/probability/certainty/deduction) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) have told which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

20. Then Pyotr <u>had to go</u> and tell her father that they had had a 'lovely time' grocery-shopping.

Had to go is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/the Past Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **had to** used in its ... (Present Simple Tense form/Past Simple Tense form/ form) Subjunctive Ш in the meaning of ••• (probability/ certainty/deduction/obligation coming from external authority/ duty/strong obligation) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/nonperfect common infinitive active/Present Simple Tense form) go. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

LEVEL 2

21. He <u>may have studied</u> a map of it before they came or – worse still! – may have spent those hours in which she had vainly searched for him in here, working out the best route.

May have studied is a ... which consists of the ... may in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... have studied referring the action to the ...

22. 'Suppose they lose, what is to be done about Tony Croom?'

Is to be done is a ... which consists of the ... *is to* in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... *be done*. Time reference is to the ...

23. 'If we're staying, we <u>should put</u> some protective enchantments around the place,' she replied.

Should put is a ... which consists of the ... **should** in the meaning of... and the ... **put**. Time reference is to the ... or ...

24. How could I have done that?

Could have done is a ... which consists of the ... **could** in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... **have done** referring the action to the

25. He didn't want to be bothered with her. She liked me best. I could get her to eat when she <u>wouldn't do</u> it for my mother, I could calm her down, when she was in one of her rages, and when she was quiet, she used to help me feed the goats.

Wouldn't do is a ... which consists of the ... wouldn't in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... do. Time reference is to the ...

26. There was a map of the country on the front page, giving the latest on the typhoons and the flooding, and although it was a Chinese newspaper and he <u>could</u> not read a word of it, he understood everything.

Could not read is a ... which consists of the ... **could not** in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... **read**. Time reference is to the ...

27. The baby, which <u>might have changed</u> everything, has brought nothing but the stench of its own peculiarities.

Might have changed is a ... which consists of the ... *might* in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... *have changed* referring the action to the ...

28. 'I may call her 'Aunt Selma' too?'

May call is a ... which consists of the ... *may* in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... *call*. Time reference is to the ... or ...

29. 'Come to my office tonight, Severus, at eleven, and you shall not complain that I have no confidence in you...'.

Shall not complain is a ... which consists of the ... **shall not** in the meaning of... and the ... **complain**. Time reference is to the ...

30. 'Look at the size of her, I think we could overpower her if we <u>had to</u>,' said Harry.

Had to is a ... in its ... in the meaning of ... It is used in the ... clause of ... of a complex sentence. The ... action is either ... or ... the moment of speaking.

31. Muriel picked up from the table a piece of bread and jam-which she <u>must have been eating</u>, he thought, when I came to the door-and began to chew at it, laughing quite loudly, and once offering him a bite.

Must have been eating is a ... which consists of the ... must in the meaning of... and the ... have been eating referring the action to the ...

32. Perhaps it wasn't here, he thought. He <u>might have taken</u> it with him to New Mexico.

Might have taken is a ... which consists of the ... might in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... have taken referring the action to the ...

33. 'He will try to convert me, maybe?' 'Are you kidding? Uncle Theron couldn't convert a kitten.'

Couldn't convert is a ... which consists of the ... **couldn't** in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... **convert** referring the action to the ... or ...

34. It's hard to tell why you are not getting jobs. The district manager <u>may</u> have blacklisted you in the retail chain industry.

May have blacklisted is a ... which consists of the ... may in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... have blacklisted referring the action to the ...

35. 'I know I shouldn't have called him a coward.'

Shouldn't have called is a ... which consists of the ... **shouldn't** in the meaning of... and the ... **have called** referring the action to the ...

36. 'I think it would seem a little easier if the memories were shared. You and I wouldn't have to bear so much by ourselves, if everybody took a part.'

Wouldn't have to bear is a ... which consists of the ... wouldn't have to in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... bear. It is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence with an ... clause of ... The ... action is either ... or ... the moment of speaking.

37. On their return they found that Davidson had just come in. 'We <u>may be</u> here for a fortnight', he said irritably.

May be is a ... which consists of the ... *may* in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... *be* referring the action to the ...

38. They can make a stand once, they can make a stand twice, but they <u>can't</u> <u>make</u> a stand all the time.

Can't make is a ... which consists of the ... **can't** in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... **make**. Time reference is to the ...

39. 'I had no idea that he <u>was to grow up</u> to be what he is. However, I was certainly intrigued by him. I returned to Hogwarts intending to keep an eye upon him.'

Was to grow up is a ... which consists of the ... was to in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... grow up. The action is ... the action of had.

40. There's the hugest roar of laughter around the room, and I feel my cheeks turn beet-red. OK, I might have gone a tad overboard.

Might have gone is a ... which consists of the ... *might* in its ... in the meaning of... and the ... *have gone* referring the action to the ...

LEVEL 3

Try to provide your perfect commentary.

Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) that you analyse a compound verbal modal predicate,
- 2) that it consists of the *modal verb* in the *form* (you name it only if the modal verb has more than one form) and *meaning*,
- 3) that it is followed by an *infinitive*, name the *form* of the infinitive,
 - 4) time reference.

- 41. 'You could have warned me.' 'I thought you would realise.'
- 42. 'How <u>could</u> he <u>have believed</u> that Becca would ever leave Holly somewhere she wasn't safe and loved? How could he have imagined that? What was wrong with him?'
- 43. It <u>must have happened</u> between Wednesday and Sunday evening, when the neighbour telephoned.
 - 44. I had something to tell you but you wouldn't stop to listen.
- 45. 'I don't know where I shall go,' said the small white dog in a small sad voice. 'I <u>daren't go back</u> to the tall woman.'
- 46. 'I noticed you hadn't left the train and I knew you had that cloak. I thought you <u>might be hiding</u> for some reason. When I saw the blinds were drawn down on that compartment I thought I'd check.'
- 47. 'It's not insult for you,' says Imran. 'London so expensive. He <u>has to work</u> too hard. We all do.'
- 48. 'Never mind, my dear, you shall have whatever you desire, I'm no snob.' Frank whirled about, Sylvia's coat in his arm like a comatose dancing partner.
- 49. 'No listen, I didn't mean –' '– to call me Mudblood? But you call everyone of my birth Mudblood, Severus. Why should I be any different?'
- 50. 'Any Dark object would have been found, I know for a fact Crabbe had a shrunken head confiscated. So you see, Malfoy can't have brought in anything dangerous!'
- 51. 'I'm a teacher!' he roared at Harry. 'A teacher, Potter! How <u>dare</u> you threaten to break down my door!
- 52. 'She'll make new friends. And that's what she will have to do all her life, the same as everyone else.'
 - 53. 'Well, then, we <u>must sort</u> you <u>out</u> some clothes.'
- 54. 'Thanks, Judge, but why now? We <u>could've had</u> this conversation a year ago, or five. It's awfully late to get involved.'
- 55. We talked about running away together, to get out of Texas, go to California, where nobody would bother us, you know. But she <u>wouldn't listen</u> to me.
- 56. However our sessions <u>are to be resumed</u> at a much better equipped centre at The Hollies, Vernon Road, and you will be advised presently of the new arrangements for transport and etc.
 - 57. 'It might not have seemed that way, but I never stopped loving you.'
 - 58. On the seventh day Bill could no longer keep his eyes open.
 - 59. 'Shall we go?'
 - 60. 'So sorry, Harry, I should have given warning.'

Key to Modal Verbs Commentary

- 1. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II form, unreal (conditional) possibility, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 2. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 3. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, a plan, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 4. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, suggestion, non-perfect common infinitive active, future
- 5. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, deduction, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 6. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II form, chances, perfect continuous infinitive active, past
- 7. a compound verbal modal predicate, used in its Present Simple Tense form, refusal to perform an action, non-perfect common infinitive active, present
- 8. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, absence of necessity with an action performed though unnecessary, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 9. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II form, emotional colouring, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 10. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, an unfulfilled past obligation, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 11. a compound verbal modal predicate, used in its Present Simple Tense form, request, future
- 12. a compound verbal modal predicate, Present Simple Tense form, permission, non-perfect common infinitive active, present
- 13. a compound verbal modal predicate, Present Simple Tense form, negative deduction, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 14. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, successful achievement, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 15. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, destiny, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 16. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, general possibility, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 17. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, a habitual action, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 18. a compound verbal modal predicate, used in its Subjunctive II form, unreal (conditional) possibility, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 19. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II form, criticism, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 20. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 21. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... chances ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.

- 22. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... a plan ... non-perfect (common) infinitive passive ... past.
- 23. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... obligation/duty ... non-perfect (common) infinitive passive ... present ... future.
- 24. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... emotional colouring ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 25. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... refusal to perform an action ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 26. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... inability ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 27. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... unreal (conditional) possibility ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 28. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... request (asking for permission) ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present ... future.
- 29. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... promise ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... future.
- 30. ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II non-perfect form ... obligation coming from external authority ... adverbial ... unreal condition ... unreal ... simultaneous with ... posterior to ...
- 31. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... deduction ... perfect continuous infinitive active ... past.
- 32. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... chances ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 33. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... unreal (conditional) possibility ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present ... future.
- 34. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... chances ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 35. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... criticism ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 36. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Conditional non-perfect Mood form ... obligation coming from external authority ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... main ... complex ... adverbial ... unreal condition ... unreal ... simultaneous with ... posterior to ...
- 37. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... chances ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... future.
- 38. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... general possibility/inability/prohibition (refusing permission) ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present.
- 39. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... destiny ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... posterior to ...
- 40. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... chances ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.

In the following you have only key notions mentioned:

- 41. Subjunctive II, criticism, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 42. Subjunctive II, emotional colouring, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 43. deduction, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 44. the Past Simple Tense form, refusal to perform an action, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 45. lack of courage, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
- 46. Subjunctive II, chances, a non-perfect continuous infinitive active, simultaneous with 'thought'
- 47. the Present Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
 - 48. promise, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, future
- 49. emotional colouring, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
- 50. the Present Simple Tense form, (negative) deduction, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 51. the Present Simple Tense form, indignation, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
- 52. the Future Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, future
- 53. strong obligation, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present or future
- 54. Subjunctive II, unreal (conditional) possibility, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 55. the Past Simple Tense form, refusal to perform an action, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 56. the Present Simple Tense form, a plan, a non-perfect (common) infinitive passive, future
 - 57. Subjunctive II, chances, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 58. the Past simple Tense form, inability, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 59. offer, a non-perfect (common) infinitive active, future
- 60. criticism/an unfulfilled past obligation, a perfect (common) infinitive active, past

TRANSLATION ON MODAL VERBS

LEVEL 1

- 1. Они **наверняка** заполнят заявление правильно. *certainty referring to the future*
- 2. Он **не осмелился** задать свой вопрос. lack of courage in the past
- 3. **Не может быть, чтобы** он перевел всю книгу! negative deduction referring to the past

4. **Зря** я рассказал ей о той ссоре. *criticism referring to the past*

- 5. **Должно быть**, он **не** знал, что ты переехал. deduction referring to the past
- 6. **Мне абсолютно все равно**, где сдавать экзамен. *a set expression with can/could*
- 7. **Если** мы **хотим** успеть на поезд, **надо** поторопиться. *a set expression, necessity*
- 8. **Неужели** вы никогда **не** слышали это имя? doubt referring to the past
- 9. Где же мой зонтик? **Очевидно**, ты забыл его в библиотеке. deduction referring to the past
- 10. Ты **будешь наказан** за свою ложь! threat
- 11. **Возможно**, вам **придется** все делать самому. chances and obligation coming from external authority in the future
- 12. **Неужели** муж действительно подарил ей **Хонду** на день рождения? doubt referring to the past
- 13. Он, **должно быть**, **не** узнал тебя. Поэтому он не поздоровался. *deduction referring to the past*
- 14. Он **должен был** остаться и помочь. an unfulfilled past obligation
- 15. **He может быть**, чтобы он танцует три часа! negative deduction referring to the past
- 16. Ты еще **смеешь** спрашивать? *courage*
- 17. Тебе **следовало бы** позаботиться о бедной Джейн! an unfulfilled past obligation
- 18. Замок, **возможно**, сломался. Дверь никак **не открывалась**. chances, refusal to perform a function, in the past
- 19. Он **мог бы** обсудить покупку новой машины сначала со мной! criticism referring to the past
- 20. **С какой стати** я стану ей помогать? *emotional colouring*

LEVEL 2

21. **Несчастные случаи неизбежны**, если вы невнимательны. *a set expression*

22. **Не может быть**, чтобы я перепутал ценники.

negative deduction

23. С какой стати я буду делиться рецептом?

emotional colouring

24. Он сделал ей предложение, но она ни за что **не соглашалась** выйти за него замуж.

refusal to perform an action

25. Тебе бы следовало давно нас познакомить.

criticism

26. Обещаю, все изменится, как только мы переедем.

promise

27. И что же могло с ними случиться??

emotional colouring

28. Нам **не надо было** платить за напитки. Напитки уже **были оплачены**.

absence of necessity

29. **Неужели** он **не** оставил свой адрес?

doubt

30. Мы должны были приготовить овощной салат, а Джейн – пирог.

a plan

31. Мы напрасно купили билеты, вход был свободный.

absence of necessity with an action performed though unnecessary

32. Должно быть, он уже подписал договор.

deduction

33. В чем дело? Они должны были обсудить детали проекта за обедом.

an unfulfilled plan

34. Возможно, он не слышал вопрос.

chances

35. **Не может быть**, чтобы они нас заметили.

negative deduction

36. Он смотрел на дельфинов и не мог не улыбаться.

a set expression

37. Она, должно быть, сейчас рисует.

deduction

38. И как он смеет так разговаривать с бабушкой?!

impudence

39. Неужели они пекут мои любимые булочки?

doubt

40. Он **чуть не** уронил сковородку.

unreal conditional possibility

LEVEL 3

- 41. Мне ничего не оставалось, как купить эту книгу.
- 42. Очевидно, ему никто не помог, и он надорвал спину.
- 43. Он наверняка все расскажет Джейн.
- 44. Вы, **возможно**, не заметили вчера, что дверь **была** незадолго до того **окрашена**.
 - 45. Мы напрасно принесли стулья в сад: у пруда есть две скамейки.
 - 46. Помочь вам приготовить пирог?
 - 47. Как он **смеет** отрицать очевидное?
 - 48. Ты чуть не разбил чашку.
 - 49. Очевидно, она была очень занята.
 - 50. Если мы хотим вызвать такси, надо отыскать телефон.
 - 51. Мы, **очевидно**, записали неправильный адрес.
 - 52. Что со мной будет?
 - 53. Это лекарство **надо** принимать дважды в день после еды.
- 54. Он **не смог бы** сам передвинуть мебель. **Должно быть**, кто-то ему помог.
 - 55. Мы должны были улететь вчера, но рейс отменили.
 - 56. Должно быть, он купил все подарки заранее.
 - 57. И кто мог выпустить попугая из клетки?!
 - 58. Ты **зря** приготовил ужин. Мы не голодны.
 - 59. **Зря** я поехал на эту встречу. Только время потерял.
 - 60. **Неужели** он повторяет грамматику уже два часа?
 - 61. Должно быть, ему никто не сказал о собрании.
 - 62. Ты мог бы помочь мне нести эту сумку. Она очень тяжёлая.
 - 63. Они не знали, что им не суждено было попасть в горы в 2020.
 - 64. Не может быть, чтобы занятия отменили.
 - 65. И ты еще **смеешь** спрашивать?
 - 66. Ему не стоило грубить родителям.
 - 67. Я должен был вставать рано, когда ходил в школу.
- 68. Мы **должны были** проверить все контракты еще вчера, **но** не успели.
 - 69. Он, вероятно, спал и пропустил звонок.
 - 70. Неужели он расстроился из-за такого пустяка?

Key to Translation on Modal Verbs

- 1. They are sure/bound/certain to fill in the form properly.
- 2. He didn't dare (to) ask his question.
- 3. He can't/couldn't have translated the entire book!
- 4. I shouldn't have told her about that guarrel.
- 5. He must have been unaware that you (had) moved.
- 6. I couldn't care less where to take the exam.
- 7. If we are to catch the train, we have to/should/need to hurry.
- 8. Can/Could it be that you have never heard this name?
- 9. Where is my umbrella? You must have left it in the library.
- 10. You shall be punished for your lie!
- 11. You may/might have to do everything yourself.
- 12. Can/Could her husband have really given her a Honda as a birthday present?
- 13. He must have failed to recognise you. That is why he didn't say hello to you.
 - 14. He should have stayed and helped.
 - 15. He can't/couldn't have been dancing for 3 hours.
 - 16. How dare you ask!
 - 17. You should have taken care of poor Jane.
- 18. The lock may/might/could have broken down. The door wouldn't open.
- 19. He **could/might have discussed** the purchase of a new car with me first!
 - 20. Why **should** I **help** her?
 - 21. Accidents will happen if you are inattentive.
 - 22. I can't/couldn't have mixed up the tickets.
 - 23. Why **should** I **share** the recipe?
 - 24. He proposed to her, but she wouldn't marry him.
 - 25. You should have introduced us to each other long ago.
 - 26. I promise that everything shall change the moment we move.
 - 27. What **could have happened** to them?
- 28. We didn't have to/didn't need to pay for the drinks. They had been paid already.
 - 29. Can/Could it be that he hasn't left his address?
 - 30. We were to cook vegetable salad and Jane was to cook a pie.
 - 31. We needn't have bought the tickets, the entrance was free.
 - 32. He must have signed the contract already.
- 33. What's the matter? They were to have discussed the details of the project at dinner.
 - 34. He may/might not have heard the question.
 - 35. They can't/couldn't have noticed us.
 - 36. He was looking at the dolphins and couldn't help smiling.
 - 37. She must be drawing now.
 - 38. How dare he talk to his granny like that?
 - 39. Can/Could they be baking my favourite buns?

- 40. He might/could have dropped the frying pan.
- 41. I couldn't but buy the book.
- 42. Nobody must have helped him and he strained his back.
- 43. He is sure/bound/certain to tell Jane everything.
- 44. You may/might not have noticed yesterday that the door had been painted shortly before.
- 45. We **needn't have brought** chairs to the garden: there are two benches near the pond.
 - 46. Shall I help you to cook the pie?
 - 47. How dare he deny the obvious?
 - 48. You might/could have broken the cup.
 - 49. She **must have been** very busy.
 - 50. If we are to call a taxi, we must find a phone.
 - 51. He must have written down the wrong address.
 - 52. What is to become of me?
 - 53. This medicine is to be taken twice a day after meals.
- 54. He **couldn't have moved** the furniture. Somebody **must have helped** him.
 - 55. We were to have flown yesterday but the flight was cancelled.
 - 56. He must have bought all the presents beforehand.
 - 57. Who can/could have let the budgie out of the cage?
 - 58. You needn't have cooked dinner, we are not hungry.
 - 59. I shouldn't have gone to that meeting. It was a waste of time.
 - 60. Can/Could he have been revising Grammar for 2 hours already?
 - 61. Nobody must have informed him about the meeting.
 - 62. You could/might help me carry the bag. It's very heavy.
 - 63. They didn't know that they were not to get to the mountains in 2020.
 - 64. The classes can't/couldn't have been cancelled.
 - 65. How dare you ask?!
 - 66. He shouldn't have been rude to his parents.
 - 67. I had to get up early when I went to school.
- 68. We were to have verified all the contracts yesterday, but we didn't manage to.
 - 69. He must have been asleep and missed the call.
 - 70. Can/Could he have got upset over such a mere trifle?

ARTICLES COMMENTARY

LEVEL 1

1. Howard sank into a corner as though he were for the time being safe, and put down \underline{a} pint of bitter.

The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) denoting ... (weight/measure/time).

- 2. He remembered the sophisticated Christmases he'd endured as a kid.
- The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/restrictive) attribute he'd endured as a kid.
- 3. At the far end of the court, just under the ancient scoreboard, \underline{a} man in a dark suit walked through the door and leaned against the retractable bleachers.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by a ... (descriptive/restrictive) attribute.
- 4. Howard, who had previously shown no sense of __ humour, thought that was a good joke.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (abstract/concrete) noun.
- 5. We live with such easy assumptions, don't we? For instance, that memory equals __ events plus time. But it's all much odder than this.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).
- 6. They found Hermione downstairs in the kitchen. She was being served __ coffee and hot rolls by Kreacher and wearing the slightly manic expression that Harry associated with exam review.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (concrete/abstract) noun.
- 7. They visited the hospital wing **twice** <u>a</u> **day**: Neville had been discharged, but Bill remained under Madam Pomfrey's care.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) denoting ... (weight/measure/time).
- 8. The prospect of parting probably forever from his aunt, uncle, and cousin was one that he was able to contemplate quite cheerfully but there was nevertheless a **certain** awkwardness in the air.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (concrete/abstract) noun modified by the ... (descriptive/restrictive) attribute certain. A certain aspect is meant.

- 9. 'I won't let you do it alone,' Jenny said, and grinned. '__Nobility is my middle name.'
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (concrete/abstract) noun.
- 10. <u>The</u> sun had risen now; its light dazzled them even through the grimy landing windows.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) which ... (denotes a unique object/has a limiting modifier).
 - 11. It had the tidiness of a monk's cell.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (abstract/concrete) noun modified by a ... (descriptive/limiting) of-phrase.
- 12. Uncle Jack was \underline{a} driver taking businessmen to the airport, waiting for them with his sign at arrivals.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).
- 13. Parvati positively beamed. Harry could tell that she was feeling guilty for having laughed at Hermione in Transfiguration. He looked around and saw that Hermione was beaming back, if possible even more brightly. __ Girls were very strange sometimes.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural). All representatives of the class are meant.
 - 14. 'Private health care. The rich are going to go crazy for it.'
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a ... (countable noun/substantivized adjective). It is used to denote a ... (group of people/abstract notion).
- 15. She was standing there gazing at a house that ought to have been completely invisible to her, if she was not \underline{a} witch.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).
 - 16. To me he still looks like the **most beautiful** child in the world.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by a ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute.

- 17. 'Don't believe a word of it!' said Doge at once. '**Not** <u>a</u> word, Harry! Let nothing tarnish your memories of Albus Dumbledore!'
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) ... (denoting measure/after the negative particle not).
- 18. 'You have to keep falling in love,' she said. 'You just have to keep falling in love with <u>the</u> **same** person.'
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute same.
 - 19. 'Whatever...' Her face suddenly snaps in __ shock.
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (abstract/concrete) noun.
- 20. 'I think <u>a</u> marriage needs children, Harry. It's hard enough to keep together even if you have a kid. Without them I don't know if it's possible.'
 - The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural). The meaning of the article is close to every/any.

LEVEL 2

- 21. Rainwater: That night, early as it was, I was the only cab. I didn't see him go in.
 - The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
- 22. Detective Anderson: When he came to your cab, did you tell him you recognized him?
- Rainwater: Oh yeah. __ Discretion may be somebody's middle name, but it isn't mine.
 - The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun.
- 23. I was \underline{a} retail store director and turned in my district manager for unethical behaviour regarding her dealings with store vendors.
 - The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
 - 24. Don't focus on the details of your being fired.
 - The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... of-phrase.

25. When they awoke, though <u>the</u> sky was still grey and the clouds hung low, it was not raining, and they went for a walk on the high road which the Americans had built along the bay.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... The specification is carried out by means of the ... of the noun. A ... object is meant.

26. 'Now, if you want to sit around with your flat mate talking about how awful I am, then that's fine, but don't come round tomorrow expecting ___ sympathy!' He paused, out of breath. 'OK?'

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun.

27. They are good men, I'm not saying a word against them.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... preceded by ...

28. 'We'll start with mine.' Suze hands me \underline{a} rectangular package and I start ripping off the silver paper in slight apprehension.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.

29. '<u>The</u> tape was cut in three places. Probably a razor blade or a Stanley knife. A slick job. It was hard to see.'

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... The specification is carried out by means of the ...

30. Something was scratching at his sleeve. He woke up, and there was the small white dog with his tongue dripping and his sides heaving, and pants coming from him a hundred to the minute.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a ...

31. '__ Practice makes perfect,' said the small white dog in his quiet little voice.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun.

32. 'I hate the way the English have of not being serious about being serious.'

The ... article is used in its ... function with a to denote a ... of ...

33. 'Draco Malfoy is <u>a</u> bad boy!' squeaked Dobby angrily.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.

34. The air was heavy with sadness, but not the sadness that comes from loss. This was a sadness born of anger and injustice.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun. A certain ... is meant.

35. Voldemort's expression remained impassive as he said, 'Greatness inspires envy, envy engenders spite, spite spawns __ lies. You must know this, Dumbledore.'

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ...

36. 'Lawyers seem to regard the Courts as confessional boxes in which to confess the sins **of** your opponent.'

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... of-phrase.

37. She had short bursts of enthusiasm, where she spilled swatches and drawings from her purse and talked about __ leather and velvet, but then her modelling engagements picked up again and she would forget all about it.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun.

38. Something crackled dangerously in his voice and \underline{a} wave **of** apprehension rose in her stomach at the sound.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... of-phrase.

39. 'Perhaps you have been looking in the **wrong** places,' suggested Dumbledore.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.

40. 'We'll start with mine.' Suze hands me a rectangular package and I start ripping off the silver paper in ___ slight apprehension.

The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun modified by a ... attribute.

LEVEL 3

Try to provide your perfect commentary.

Remember, that you are to mention:

- 1) the *article* and its *function*,
- 2) the *morphological characteristics* of the noun or word it is used with,
- 3) some *other peculiarities* if necessary.
- 41. But George moves the way Sinatra sang, radiating that kind of effortless power, as if all this craft and art is the **most natural** thing in the world.
 - 42. 'A break-in?' John said with __ undisguised amazement.
- 43. He pronounced the word as if it were holy; he surrounded it with ___ invisible cushions.
- 44. When he came out, he bought a home edition of the Tribune, \underline{a} morning paper.
- 45. Kate stepped in from the backyard with her bucket of __ gardening tools, and her father beamed at her as if she'd just won a Nobel Prize.
- 46. She looked at Dun to see if he would suggest they get a bottle, and when he didn't, she told the waitress, 'The house brand will be fine.'
 - 47. 'Yes, that's right. I teach __ history.'
- 48. \underline{A} watery sun was trying to break through the clouds now and it had stopped drizzling at last.

- 49. She dug a heap of meat and __ rice on to her chopsticks and paused with it before her mouth.
 - 50. Perhaps the Chinese believe that prosperity is necessary for happiness.
- 51. In the second week of the summer vacation \underline{a} letter arrived with a Chislehurst postmark.
 - 52. The **last** thing I expected was a reply the next morning.
- 53. What if by some means __ remorse can be made to flow backwards, can be transmuted into simple guilt, then apologised for, and then forgiven?
- 54. He habitually tried to see <u>the</u> good in every person he knew and met, he realized.
- 55. It was difficult for me to hate him, despite all <u>the</u> sadness he **had caused** in **his lifetime**.
 - 56. Evelyn visited her **four times** a **year**.
- 57. 'I love <u>the</u> Chinese,' Devlin said simply, leaning back. 'I admire them. They believe that tomorrow will be a better day.'
- 58. <u>The</u> elevator had arrived, and she squeezed in just as the doors were shutting.
- 59. Annie tried to catch Jackson's eye, but the boy was staring out of the taxi window with <u>a</u> suspicious intensity.
- 60. So I had to explain this to a group of __ beautiful young Italian boys and girls.

Key to Articles Commentary

- 1. indefinite, numerical, countable, singular, measure
- 2. definite, specifying, countable, plural, restrictive
- 3. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 4. zero, generic, uncountable, abstract
- 5. indefinite, classifying, countable, plural
- 6. zero, generic, uncountable, concrete
- 7. indefinite, numerical, countable, singular, time
- 8. indefinite, aspective, uncountable, abstract, descriptive
- 9. zero, generic, uncountable, abstract
- 10. definite, specifying, countable, singular, denotes a unique object
- 11. definite, specifying, uncountable, abstract, limiting
- 12. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
- 13. zero, generic, countable, plural
- 14. definite, generic, substantivized adjective, group of people
- 15. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
- 16. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting
- 17. indefinite, numerical, countable, singular, after the negative particle **not**
 - 18. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting

- 19. zero, generic, uncountable, abstract
- 20. indefinite, generic, countable, plural
- 21. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting
- 22. zero, generic, uncountable abstract
- 23. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 24. definite, specifying, countable, plural, limiting
- 25. definite, specifying, countable, singular, meaning, unique
- 26. zero, generic, uncountable abstract
- 27. indefinite, numerical, countable, singular, not
- 28. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 29. definite, specifying, countable, singular, meaning, context
- 30. indefinite, numerical, numeral
- 31. zero, generic, uncountable abstract
- 32. definite, generic, substantivized adjective, group, people
- 33. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 34. indefinite, aspective, uncountable abstract, aspect
- 35. zero, classifying, countable, plural
- 36. definite, specifying, countable, plural, limiting
- 37. zero, generic, uncountable concrete
- 38. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 39. definite, specifying, countable, plural, limiting
- 40. zero, generic, uncountable abstract, descriptive
- 41. definite, specifying, a countable singular noun modified by a limiting attribute
- 42.zero, generic, an uncountable abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute
- 43. zero, classifying, a countable plural noun modified by a descriptive attribute
- 44. indefinite, classifying, a countable singular noun modified by a descriptive attribute
- 45.zero, classifying, a countable plural noun modified by a limiting attribute
- 46. definite, specifying, a countable singular noun, the specification is carried out by means of the situation
 - 47. zero, generic, an uncountable abstract noun
- 48. indefinite, aspective, a countable singular noun which denotes a unique object and is modified by a descriptive attribute, a certain aspect is meant
 - 49. zero, generic, an uncountable concrete noun
- 50. definite, generic, a substantivized adjective, a group of people is meant
- 51. indefinite, classifying, a countable singular noun modified by a descriptive attribute

- 52. definite, specifying, a countable singular noun, the specification is carried out by means of a limiting attribute
 - 53. zero, generic, an uncountable abstract noun
- 54. definite, generic, a substantivized adjective, an abstract notion is meant
- 55. definite, specifying, an uncountable abstract noun, the specification is carried out by means of a limiting attribute
- 56. indefinite, numerical, with a countable singular noun denoting time
- 57. definite, generic, a substantivized adjective, an abstract notion is meant
- 58. definite, specifying, a countable singular noun, the specification is carried out by means of the situation
- 59. indefinite, aspective, with an uncountable abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute, a certain aspect is meant
- 60. zero, classifying, a countable plural noun modified by descriptive attributes

TRANSLATION ON ARTICLES

LEVEL 1

1. Мы все ждали **Рождество**, когда все **семейство Смитов** соберется за одним столом.

articles with personal names and names of holidays

- 2. Полковник Джонс дал мне хороший совет. articles with personal names and abstract nouns
- 3. Я хочу посетить **Букингемский дворец** и **Белый дом**. articles with miscellaneous proper names
- 4. Профессор Джонсон внимательно выслушал учителя Смита. articles with personal names
- 5. Он получил **хорошее образование**. *articles with abstract nouns*
- 6. **Картина Айвазовского** была похищена из **Лувра** в прошлую субботу. Похитителя уже нашли.

articles with personal names

7. **Пустыня Намиб** в **юго-восточной Африке** – одно из самых суровых мест **на земле**.

articles with geographical names

8. **Невозможное** может стать возможным. articles with substantivized adjectives

- 9. Честная Джейн рассказала нам все, что знает о Малой Азии.
- articles with personal names and geographical names
- 10. Что там за машины припаркована? Мне кажется, это форд. articles with personal names
- 11. Эльбрус очень красивая гора, она расположена на **Кавказе**. articles with geographical names
- 12. В нем есть **радость**, которую не так часто можно встретить в людях. *articles with abstract nouns*
- 13. **Итальянцы** всегда славились **гостеприимством**. articles with words denoting plural personal entities
- 14. Вам нравится французская литература? articles with abstract nouns
- 15. Я очень мало знаю о **скульптуре Древнего Китая**. articles with abstract nouns and geographical names
- 16. Вы бы повесили скорее **Айвазовского** или **Шишкина** в холле? articles with personal names
- 17. Большинство **здоровых** не помнят, когда последний раз болели. *articles with substantivised adjectives*
- 18. Было **раннее утро**. Дети еще спали, а **тетушка** Роза уже готовила завтрак.

articles with parts of the day and personal names

- 19. **Нидерланды** и **Швеция** расположены в **Северной Европе**. articles with geographical names
- 20. Она побывала на Сейшелах и Багамах и прямо сейчас планирует новое путешествие.

articles with geographical names

- 21. Ему пришлось переехать из **Вашингтона** во **Флориду**. articles with geographical names
- 22. Мы встретились у **Лондонского моста**.

articles with miscellaneous proper names

- 23. Это была **грусть**, порожденная **гневом** и **несправедливостью**. *articles with abstract nouns*
- 24. **Маленькая Джейн** заснула, пока ей читали сказку. articles with personal names
- 25. Ему предложили работу на **Кольском полуострове**.

articles with geographical names

26. Смиты всегда опаздывают.

articles with personal names

27. Я не хочу читать про **Эверест**, я хочу почитать про **пустыню Сахару**.

articles with geographical names

28. Это ужасная новость!

articles with abstract nouns

29. Ривьера – это лучшее место для отпуска, и все же я бы предпочел озеро Комо.

articles with geographical names

30. **Честность** и **искренность** всегда были его отличительной чертой. *articles with abstract nouns*

LEVEL 2

- 31. Я бы не вышла замуж за Джонсона. Джонсоны ужасные снобы.
- 32. Друг познается в беде.
- 33. Его встретили в Лондонском аэропорту и отвезли в отель Ритц.
- 34. Мои друзья отправились на **Багамы**, а я полетел на **Кипр**.
- 35. **Красавица Эмилия** вошла в комнату и улыбнулась. **Маленькая Энн** подбежала к ней.
 - 36. Давайте проведем отпуск на Сицилии, ну или хотя бы в Римини.
- 37. Вас ждет какой-то **Джонсон**. Он говорит, что приехал с **Ривьеры** и привез вам подарок.
 - 38. Он не в достаточной степени джентльмен, чтобы промолчать.
- 39. Мои любимые праздники это **Рождество**, **День святого Валентина** и **Пасха**.
 - 40. Дорогой Джон написал это письмо 50 лет назад.
 - 41. Ее всегда привлекало новое.
 - 42. Я бы поехала на Северный полюс, а не в Южную Америку.
 - 43. У нас нет лучшего футболиста, чем он. Хотя он, конечно, не Месси.
 - 44. Грузовик ехал со **скоростью 50 миль в час**.
 - 45. Хотя он и **ребенок**, он не верит вам.
 - 46. Я мечтаю поехать на **Крит**.
 - 47. Мы едем в **Альпы**, а я всегда хотел увидеть **Везувий**.
- 48. Я люблю **белорусскую литературу** и **английскую литературу XIX века**.
 - 49. Бедный Том забыл подготовить доклад о Гайд парке.
 - 50. Колесо изобрели китайцы.
 - 51. Их объединяет **любовь** и **уважение** к людям.
- 52. Что интереснее посетить: **Эйфелеву башню** или **Великую китайскую стену**?
 - 53. Его дядя исследует Южный океан, а тетя Сейшельские острова.
 - 54. Он не Отелло: он совсем не ревнив.

- 55. Бобы надо сажать на глубину 6 дюймов.
- 56. Мы сфотографировались возле музея Гетти.
- 57. Доброжелательность ваш ключ к успеху.
- 58. Японцы не очень часто отдыхают на Родосе.
- 59. «**Королева Елизавета**» зашла в порт.
- 60. **Римская империя** прекратила свое существование в V веке н. э.

Key to Translation on Articles

- 1. We were all waiting for **Christmas**, when **the Smiths** gather at the table.
 - 2. Colonel Johns gave me good advice.
 - 3. I want to visit Buckingham Palace and the White House.
 - 4. Professor Johnson listen to the teacher Smith attentively.
 - 5. He has got a good education.
- 6. **An Aivazovsky** was stolen from **the Louvre** last Saturday. The thief has already been found.
- 7. The Namib (Desert) in South-Eastern Africa is one of the most severe places on Earth.
 - 8. The impossible can become possible.
 - 9. Honest Jane told us everything she knew about Asia Minor.
 - 10. What car is parked over there? It seems to me it's a Ford.
 - 11. Elbrus is a very beautiful mountain, it is in the Caucasus.
 - 12. There is a joy in him that is quite rare in people.
 - 13. The Italians have always been renowned for hospitality.
 - 14. Do you like French literature?
 - 15. I know very little about the sculpture of ancient China.
 - 16. Would you rather hang an Aivazovsky or a Shishkin in the hall?
- 17. Most the healthy do not remember when was the last time they were sick.
- 18. It was **early morning**. The kids were still sleeping and **Aunt Rose** was already cooking breakfast.
 - 19. The Netherlands and Sweden are situated in northern Europe.
- 20. She has been to **the Seychelles** and **the Bahamas** and is planning a new journey right now.
 - 21. He had to move from Washington to Florida.
 - 22. We met at London Bridge.
 - 23. This was a sadness born of anger and injustice.
 - 24. Little Jane fell asleep while she was being read a fairytale.
 - 25. He was got a job offer from the Kola Peninsula.
 - 26. The Smiths are always late.
- 27. I don't want to read about **Everest**, I want to read about **the Sahara** (**Desert**).
 - 28. This is terrible news!
- 29. **The Riviera** is the best place for vacation, yet I would rather go to lake Como.
 - 30. Honesty and sincerity has always been his distinctive feature.

- 31. I wouldn't marry a Johnson. The Johnsons are dreadful snobs.
- 32. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
- 33. He was met at London airport and taken to the Ritz (hotel).
- 34. My friends went to the Bahamas, and I flew to Cyprus.
- 35. The beautiful Emilia entered the room and smiled. Little Ann came running up to her.
 - 36. Let's go on holiday to Sicily, or at least to Rimini.
- 37. A Johnson is waiting for you. He says he came from the Riviera and brought you a gift.
 - 38. He is not **gentleman enough to** keep silent.
- 39. My favourite holidays are **Christmas**, **Saint Valentine's Day** and **Easter**.
 - 40. **Dear John** wrote this letter 50 years ago.
 - 41. She has always been attracted by the new.
 - 42. I would go to the North Pole, not South America.
- 43. We do not have a better football player than he is. Although he is surely not a Messi.
 - 44. The lorry was going at a speed of 50 miles an hour.
 - 45. Child though he is he doesn't believe you.
 - 46. I dream of going to **Crete**.
 - 47. We are going to the Alps and I have always wanted to see Vesuvius.
- 48.1 like Belarusian literature and the English literature of the 19th century.
 - 49. Poor Tom forgot/has forgotten to make a report on Hyde Park.
 - 50. The wheel was invented by the Chinese.
 - 51. They both have **love** and **respect** for people.
- 52. What is more interesting to visit: the Eiffel Tower or the Great Wall of China?
- 53. His uncle explores the South Ocean, and his aunt explores the Seychelles.
 - 54. He is not an Othello, he's not jealous at all.
 - 55. Beans are to be planted at a depth of 6 inches.
 - 56. We took pictures at the Getty Museum.
 - 57. **Goodwill** is your key to **success**.
 - 58. The Japanese do not often go on holiday to Rhodes.
 - 59. 'The Queen Elizabeth' called at the port.
 - 60. The Roman Empire ceased to exist in the 5th century.

MOCK EXAMINATION CARDS

LEVEL 1

Card 1

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

I *tried* to smooth things over. I said, 'But thanks for your concern.' It didn't do any good, though. She stayed quiet throughout the evening, and the next day she left for her conference and I missed her **as if** she (1) <u>were</u> some kind of, almost, organ out of my body, and I think she (2) <u>missed</u> me, too, because she phoned me from Los Angeles several times (3) <u>a</u> day and she'd say, 'What are you doing right now?' and, 'I really **wish** you (4) <u>were</u> here.' I wished I were there, too, and I couldn't believe I (5) <u>had wasted</u> that chance to be with her. I made a lot of promises to myself about being more easygoing in the future, not so quick to take offence, but then, when she came home, (6) <u>the</u> **very first** thing she did was get mad at me about this thorn I had in my index finger. I'm serious. She said, 'What is this? This is infected!'

'Yes, I think it (7) must be,' I said.

'You (8) should have asked someone for help.'

- 1. **Were** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense /Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative clause/adverbial clause of comparison) of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as if**. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) **missed**.
- 2. **Missed** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to miss** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past state).
- 3. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) denoting ... (weight/measure/time).
- 4. **Were** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after **wish** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the finite verb **wish**.
- 5. **Had wasted** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II perfect) form of the verb **to miss** used to denote a/an ... (unreal action/succession of past actions/past action/past action completed before another past action).

- 6. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/restrictive) attribute **very first**.
- 7. **Must be** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb **must** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (strong obligation/chances/deduction/emphatic advice) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form) **be** which refers the state to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 8. **Should have asked** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Suppositional Mood form/the Conditional Mood form) which consists of the modal verb **should** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (obligation (duty)/advice/criticism/probability) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) **have asked** which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. **Жаль**, что он так и не дослушал that story.
- Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause
- 2. **Возможно**, мы забронировали a non-smoking room, I don't remember. *Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'chances'*
- 3. **В прошлом году** он **часто** ложился спать at 2 a.m.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'a habitual action', remember to refer the action to the past

- 4. **Если бы** мы опоздали **тогда**, бабушка **бы** очень расстроилась. Use the Oblique Moods that we find in complex sentences with adverbial clauses of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference
- 5. Мы должны были позвонить Jane but we forgot.
- Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'an obligation out of 'an unfulfilled plan'
- 6. Я не хочу ехать на **Балтийское море**, it's so cold. articles with geographical Names
- 7. Со мной поздоровалась **разгневанная Энн**. articles with personal names modified by attributes, the subject is acted upon
- 8. **Пока** они **будут обсуждать** football, мы **попьем** с тобой coffee with cakes.

Use tense forms, two future actions, the first is durable and is used in an adverbial clause of condition

9. Я **бы предпочел**, чтобы **они** не звонили мне at night.

Use the modal expression of preference in the main clause and one of the Oblique Moods we find in object clauses after it 10. Я **выучил** грамматику и **готов** to answer.

Use tense forms, the first is an action complete in the past with results in the present

Card 2

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'Well, I got someone I want you to meet. This is Elizabeth Abbott, the preacher's daughter. Remember? I know you (1) <u>must have seen</u> her when she was just (2) <u>a</u> youngster. This is my daddy, Mr Cunningham.'

'How do you do,' Elizabeth said.

'Aren't you the one got married?' Mr Cunningham asked Elizabeth.

'That was her sister, Daddy. (3) The other daughter.'

'Well, anyone (4) could make that mistake.'

'Of course, they could,' said Mrs Stimson. 'I'll tell you why she's here, Daddy-'

'I (5) <u>would advise</u> you against the marriage, young lady,' Mr Cunningham said. 'Call it off. Get a divorce. I married.' He (6) <u>turned</u> and (6) <u>looked</u> out the window again. 'She aged so,' he said finally.

'Daddy?'

But he went on staring at framed squares of blue.

When they (7) <u>had tiptoed</u> out to the hall again Mrs Stimson said, 'Oh, my, I **wish** you (8) <u>had seen</u> him more at his best.'

- 1. **Must have seen** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb **must** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (strong obligation/chances/deduction/emphatic advice) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) **have seen** which refers the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 2. The ... (*zero/indefinite/definite*) article is used in its ... (*classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective*) function with a/an ... (*countable/uncountable*) noun in the ... (*singular/plural*).
- 3. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/restrictive) attribute other.
- 4. **Could make** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (general possibility/permission/probability/deduction/chances/certainty) and the ... (non-perfect common infinitive active/non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form) **make**. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

- 5. **Would advise** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) form which is used in a ... (complex/simple) sentence ... (to sound polite/beginning with 'but for'/with implied condition). The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) moment of speaking.
- 6. **Turned** and **looked** are ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II) forms of the verbs **to turn** and **to look** used to denote a/an/... (unreal actions/succession of past actions/past action/past action completed before another past action).
- 7. **Had tiptoed** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect/Subjunctive II perfect) form of the verb **to tiptoe** used to denote a/an ... (succession of past actions/past action/unreal action/past action completed before another past action).
- 8. **Had seen** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after **wish** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) **wish**.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. **Жаль**, что билеты не раскупили fast.

(Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause)

2. Если бы мы соревновались, я бы победил.

(Use the Oblique Moods we find in complex sentences with adverbial clauses of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference)

3. Я **не могу не** смеяться, когда читаю this book.

(Use a set expression with a modal verb)

4. Нам **лучше** перестать беспокоиться.

(Use the modal expression of advice in the required Oblique Mood form)

5. Мы, **должно быть**, **не** слышали the alarm-clock.

(Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'deduction', pay attention to the way we express that in the negative)

6. Когда мы построим дом, поедем в отпуск.

(*Use tense forms, two future actions, the first is a complete action and is used in an adverbial clause of time*)

7. **К моменту**, как Джон **проснулся**, мама уже **приготовила** завтрак. (*Use tense forms, two past actions, the second is complete before the first*)

8. Я не хочу обедать в Макдональдсе, я хочу пойти в Васильки.

(articles with miscellaneous proper names)

9. Мы **должны были** завести the alarm-clock, **but** we forgot.

(*Use the modal verb that has the meaning 'an unfulfilled plan'*)

10. Его встретила холодная и незнакомая Венеция.

(articles with miscellaneous proper names, the subject is acted upon)

Card 3

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

Sitting in my room the following afternoon, I found myself with nothing to do. The bargain with the university was made, except for a formality which I (1) <u>could knock off</u> next day: Luke had returned to London: I could stretch myself out on the sofa like an undergraduate, and read a book.

Before I lay down, the head porter had rung up to know if I was in my rooms. It seemed a little odd: I thought it (2) <u>might have to do</u> with Arthur Brown's dinner-party that night. And what he called 'shamefully short notice', Brown (3) <u>was organizing</u> (4) <u>a</u> dinner in his rooms. For whom, and for what, I wasn't told, only that he needed me. It sounded **as though he** (5) <u>were acting</u> fast, as though he were not glossing over the previous night.

I (6) <u>had not been reading</u> for half an hour when I heard (7) __ steps, a muttering of steps, outside. I thought: 'Heaven (8) <u>help</u> me!'

- 1. **Could knock off** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/probability/certainty/chances/general possibility/permission) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) **knock off**. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 2. **Might have to do** is ... (Subjunctive II form/a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **might** used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/probability/certainty/chances/general possibility/permission) and the ... (non-perfect verbs/Present Simple Tense forms/non-perfect common infinitives active) **have to** and **do**. The action is ... (prior/posterior) to **thought**.
- 3. **Was organizing** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous) form of the verb **to organize** used to denote a/an ... (past action of unusual frequency/action in progress at a definite moment in the past).
- 4. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).

- 5. **Were acting** is ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II continuous) form of the verb **to act** which is used in the ... (predicative clause/adverbial clause of comparison*) of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as though**. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) continuous form of ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) **sounded**.
- 6. Had not been reading is ... (the Past Perfect Tense/the Past Perfect Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II perfect continuous) form of the verb to read used to denote a/an ... (past action of a certain duration that was still in progress at a given moment in the past/past action of a certain duration completed before another past action/unreal past action).
- 7. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).
- 8. **Help** is ... (the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive I/Subjunctive II/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) form which is used in a ... (complex/simple) sentence in a formulaic expression of ... (wish/concession).

*Note: to differentiate between predicative clauses and adverbial clauses of comparison try to stop after the conjunction *as if/as though*. If the sentence is complete without the clause that comes after the conjunction, that clause is an adverbial clause of comparison. If the sentence is not complete without that clause, it's a predicative clause.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Какова протяженность **Великой Китайской стены**? articles with miscellaneous proper names
- 2. Пока мы обсуждали фильм, начался снег. Use tense forms, two past actions, the first is durable
- 3. Они, **по-видимому**, забыли книги at home. *Use a modal verb in the meaning 'deduction'*
- 4. **Жаль**, что они не купили that house.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause

5. **Премьер-министр Джонсон** встретился с **королевой Елизаветой Второй**.

articles with personal names

- 6. Я должен был прийти к врачу в пять, but I got stuck in a traffic jam. Use the modal verb that has the meaning 'an unfulfilled plan'
- 7. **C тех пор**, как я **приехал** сюда, я **не видел** ни одной кошки. Use tense forms, the first is a past action, the second denotes an action that began in the past and lasted up till the moment of speaking

8. Если бы он слетал в Париж, он бы привез детям подарки.

Use the Oblique Moods we find in complex sentences with adverbial clauses of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference

9. Почему ты смеешься? **Мог бы и** перестать смеяться now when I'm crying.

Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'criticism'

10. Она так выглядит, словно она не понимает меня.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in predicative clauses after 'as if'

Card 4

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

We (1) <u>would have</u> the wild west all over again **if** we abandoned science in favor of profits.

In fact, I just (2) <u>read</u> a proposal **yesterday** from (3) <u>a</u> company that wants to turn space into a mausoleum by launching (4) <u>the</u> diseased into orbit.

(5) <u>Can</u> you <u>imagine</u> our telecommunications satellites colliding with dead bodies?

Last week, I had a billionaire CEO in my office who (6) <u>was petitioning</u> to launch a mission to a near-field asteroid, drag it closer to earth, and mine it for precious minerals.

I actually (7) <u>had to remind</u> this guy that dragging asteroids into near earth orbit posed potential risks of global catastrophe!

'Ms Ashe, I can assure you, (8) <u>should</u> this bill <u>be passed</u>, the throngs of entrepreneurs rushing into space will not be rocket scientists.'

- 1. **Would have** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form/the Conditional Mood form) of the verb to have which is used in the ... (subordinate clause of unreal condition/main clause of a complex sentence). The (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal Conditional predicate/Subjunctive II/the Mood) shows that the (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the moment of speaking.
- 2. **Read** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to read** used to denote a ... (repeated action/repeated past action/habitual past state/single past event).
- 3. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute that wants to turn space into a mausoleum...

- 4. The ... (*zero/indefinite/definite*) article is used in its ... (*classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective*) function with a ... (*countable singular noun/substantivized adjective*). A group of people is meant.
- 5. Can imagine is ... (Subjunctive II form/a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb can used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (chances/general possibility/ability/permission) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) imagine. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 6. **Was petitioning** is ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous) form of the verb **to petition** which is used to denote a/an ... (single past event/action in progress at a definite moment in the past/unreal action/unreal action in progress).
- 7. **Had to remind** is ... (Subjunctive II form/a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **had to** used in its ... (non-perfect/Past Perfect Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/strong obligation/obligation coming from external authority) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) **remind**. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 8. **Should be passed** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Suppositional Mood/the Conditional Mood) form of the verb **to pass** which is used in the ... (main clause/adverbial clause of condition) of a complex sentence. The ... (non-perfect active/perfect active/non-perfect passive/perfect passive) form of the ... (compound verbal modal predicate/Suppositional Mood/Conditional Mood) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to/posterior to) the moment of speaking and the subject ... (acts/is acted upon).

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. We have plenty of time, мы **зря** спешили.
- Use the modal verb that has the meaning 'absence of necessity with an action performed though unnecessary'
- 2. Она **уже два года ищет** своих предков¹ в Италии. Use a tense form, an action began in the past and lasted up till the moment of speaking and is still going on
- 3. Она не **была** уверена, **придёт ли** он на её концерт. *Use tense forms, observe the rules of the sequence of tenses*
- 4. **Демократы** победили на выборах. *articles with countable nouns*
- 5. Важно, чтобы каждый ребенок ел меньше сладостей и чипсов.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in nominal clauses after modal meaning in the main clause

¹ Предок - ancestor.

- 6. Я вынужден был остаться и помыть посуду, although I didn't want to. Use the modal verb that has the meaning 'obligation coming from external authority'
- 7. **Если бы не** мои родители, я **бы** не знал, how to deal with this problem. Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in simple sentences beginning with 'but for'
- 8. Пожилые родители **бедного Джона** хотели, чтобы он получил **хорошее образование** в университете.

articles with personal names and abstract nouns

9. И что со мной будет?

Use a set expression with a modal verb

10. Жаль, что он не проверил свое расписание.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause

Card 5

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'You drive,' she told Melissa. 'I can't.'

'Margaret, what in the world?'

'Drive, (1) will you?'

Melissa muttered something and got out of the car. When she was back in, behind the wheel, she said, 'There's something you're not telling me. You're getting a divorce.'

'Oh, don't be silly.'

'Well, what, then?'

But Margaret only buried her face in (2) a Kleenex². She cried until they were well into New Jersey; she cried her way through half the Kleenex box, building a pile of soggy tissues on the seat beside her. She topped all (3) the records **she had set in the last two months**. 'Margaret, would you mind?' Melissa said. 'Is this what you (4) have planned for our whole *trip?*' Margaret turned further toward the window. She (5) should have gone by train. This car (6) was Brady's, and everything about it – the smudged radio dial, the leathery smell, the masculine-looking tangle of stray coins and matchbooks and tobacco flecks in the dashboard tray – made her wonder how she could have thought of leaving him. If she were alone, she (7) would have turned the car around. (But then, when he opened the door and saw her, wouldn't that patient look cross his face again? He would shepherd her into the room, saying, 'There, now,' and making her wish she (8) had just headed on south and never come back.)

 $^{^{2}}$ 'клинекс', бумажный носовой платок (по названию фирмы-производителя).

- 1. **Will** is ... (a modal verb/Subjunctive II form/the Future Simple form) used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (annoyance/request/persistence to perform an action). Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 2. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).
- 3. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute she had set in the last two months.
- 4. **Have planned** is ... (the Present Perfect Tense form/a compound verbal modal predicate) of the verb **to plan** used to denote a ... (single past action/past action connected in its result with the present/obligation coming from external authority).
- 5. **Should have gone** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Suppositional Mood/ the Conditional Mood) form which consists of the modal verb **should** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form/used in its Suppositional Mood form/used in its Conditional Mood form) in the meaning of ... (probability/advice (recommendation)/obligation (duty)) and the ... (perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form/perfect common infinitive active) **have gone** referring the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 6. **Was** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect) form of the verb **to be** which is used to denote a/an ... (single past state/action in progress at a definite moment in the past/unreal action/unreal state).
- 7. Would have is turned (a compound predicate/Subjunctive II/the Conditional Mood) form of the verb to turn which is used in the ... (adverbial clause of unreal condition/main clause of a complex sentence) with ... (an adverbial clause of unreal condition/implied condition/but for'). The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal *predicate/Subjunctive* II/the Conditional Mood) shows (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the moment of speaking.
- 8. **Had headed** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after **wish** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the moment of speaking.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. Странно, что вы не позвали Джона.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in nominal clauses after personal reaction in the main clause

- 2. **Не может быть, чтобы** они забыли про нашу встречу! Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'negative deduction'
- 3. Его парализовал **страх**. *articles with abstract nouns*
- 4. Они, **по всей вероятности**, уже добрались домой. *Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'deduction' OR 'certainty'*
- 5. Я никогда раньше не занимался дайвингом. It's the first time.

Use a tense form, the action described began in the past, lasted till the moment of speaking and its result is important at present

6. Я очень переживал, как бы мы не опоздали.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in nominal clauses after 'fear' in the main clause

- 7. **Если бы не** такси, я **бы** никогда не добрался до аэропорта вовремя. Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in simple sentences beginning with 'but for'
- 8. Я мечтаю посетить **Британский музей** и походить по **Лондонскому мосту**.

articles with proper names

9. Белье постирано, можешь развесить его.

Use a tense form, the result of a prior action is stressed, and a modal verb in the meaning of 'permission'

10. Эти таблетки **надо** принимать дважды в день после еды, **если** вы **хотите** быстро поправиться.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning 'order, instruction' and a set expression

Card 6

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'Now I (1) have to go to the grocery store,' she said. 'Anything you need?'

'Have you been driving long?' he asked her. 'Since I was eleven,' Elizabeth said. 'I (2) <u>haven't had</u> time to get a license yet, though.' She swerved neatly around an on-coming taxi. 'I can see that I'm making you nervous,' she told Timothy, 'but I'm (3) \underline{a} better driver than you realize. I'm trying to save the brakes.'

'I'd rather you (4) saved us,' Timothy said. 'Matthew practically lives there.'

'He used to,' said Elizabeth. 'Then your mother said he (5) <u>was wasting</u> his life on a dead-end job.'

'Matthew is (6) the crazy one in the family,' Timothy said.

'I **doubt** if he (7) were crazy at all,' Elizabeth said.

She parked haphazardly in a space barely longer than the car, and they climbed out.

'I'd like a turkey,' she told the butcher. 'Kind of fat.'

He disappeared into a back room. Mrs Emerson's friend (8) <u>could be heard</u> all over the store.

- 1. **Have to go** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/The Present Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **have to** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form/used in its Present Perfect Tense form) in the meaning of ... (deduction/strong obligation/obligation coming from external authority) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) **go**. Time reference is the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 2. **Haven't had** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Perfect Tense form/Subjunctive II perfect) form of the verb **to have** used to denote a/an ... (past action completed connected in its result with the present/obligation due to circumstances/incomplete action that started in the past and is still happening in the present with emphasis on the result of the activity).
- 3. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by a ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute.
- 4. **Saved** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after **would rather** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (posterior/prior) to the moment of speaking.
- 5. **Was wasting** is ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous) form of the verb **to waste** which is used to denote a/an ... (unreal action in progress in the past/single past event/action in progress in the past).
- 6. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with the ... (countable/uncountable) noun-substitute **one** in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute **in the family**.
- 7. **Were** is ... (the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject/indirect question) clause of a complex sentence after ... (wish/doubt/modal meaning) in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the finite verb **doubt**.

8. **Could be heard** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its ... (-/non-perfect/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (chances/general possibility/ability/permission) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive) ... (active/passive) **be heard**. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. **He может быть, чтобы** он купил such an expensive car! Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'negative deduction'

2. Жаль, что сейчас нет никаких скидок.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause

3. Мне очень нравится **французский рэп** и совсем не нравится **американский джаз**.

articles with abstract nouns

4. Я не хотел **бы** ссориться с лучшим другом.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in simple sentences with implied condition

5. Пока забор чинили, старый дом рухнул.

Use tense forms, the first past action is durable and the subject is acted upon

6. Республиканцы проиграли на выборах.

articles with countable nouns

7. Нам не следовало показывать ему тот прайс-лист.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning 'criticism'

8. Как **долго** вы **живете** в этом городе?

Use a tense form, the action began in the past, lasted up till the moment of speaking and is still going on

9. Мы **должны были** обсудить это вчера **but** we didn't.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'an unfulfilled plan'

10. **Если вдруг** цены упадут, сразу же **покупай** а new car.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in clauses of problematic condition and the Imperative Mood

Card 7

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

Elizabeth glanced in the rear-view mirror and watched Mrs Emerson straighten her hat, which was circled with spring flowers. They were returning from a heart specialist that old Dr Felson had recommended. Ordinarily Mrs Emerson drove herself, but today she (1) <u>must have been</u> nervous over the appointment. She (2) <u>had risen</u> at five-thirty, and collected her gloves and hat two hours early. Then at the last moment she had looked at the cloudless April sky and said, 'Will it rain, do you think? (3) You'<u>d better drive</u> me, Elizabeth.' So, Elizabeth had put on the chauffeur's cap, once black but now gray with mildew, which she had found on a rafter in the garage the month before. 'Oh, must you?'

Mrs Emerson always said when she saw it. Elizabeth (4) thought it was (5) a wonderful cap. Whenever she wore it, she made Mrs Emerson sit in back. If there had been a lap-robe she would have tucked it in; if it hadn't looked silly with jeans, she (6) would have liked a gold buttoned jacket and driving gloves. Only Mrs Emerson would never have entered into (7) the spirit of it. 'Sometimes,' she said now, 'I feel you are making fun of me, Elizabeth. Did you have to stand at attention when I came back to the car? (8) Did you have to click your heels when you shut my door?'

- 1. **Must have been** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/The Present Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **must** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form/used in its Present Perfect Tense form) in the meaning of ... (deduction/probability/certainty/strong obligation/obligation coming from external authority) and the ... (perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form/perfect common infinitive active) **have been**. Time reference is the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 2. **Had risen** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II perfect/a modal verb) form the verb **to rise** used to denote a/an ... (succession of past actions/unreal action/past action completed before another past action).
- 3. Had better drive is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Past Simple Tense form/Subjunctive II form) which is used in a ... (complex sentence/simple sentence) and consists of the ... (modal verb/modal expression) had better used in its ... (Past Simple/Subjunctive II) form to express ... (regret/preference/advice) plus the ... (non-perfect verb/non-perfect common infinitive/Present Simple Tense form) active drive. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 4. **Thought** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to think** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past state).
- 5. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute wonderful.
- 6. **Would have liked** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II/the Conditional Mood) form of the verb to like which is used in the ... (subordinate clause of unreal condition/main clause of a complex sentence). The (non-perfect/perfect) form of (the compound verbal modal ... predicate/Subjunctive *II/the* **Conditional** Mood) shows that (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) the moment of speaking.
- 7. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a ... (singular/plural) noun modified by a ... (descriptive/limiting) of-phrase.

8. **Did have to click** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/The Present Perfect Tense form/the Past Simple Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **did have to** used in its ... (non-perfect/Past Simple Tense/Present Perfect Tense) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/strong obligation/obligation coming from external authority) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) **click**. Time reference is the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Мне **нельзя** выходить на улицу, **если** я **хочу** поскорее выздороветь. Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'order/instruction' and a set expression
 - 2. Нам **бы лучше** не пить such hot tea.

Use the modal expression of advice in the required Oblique Mood form

- 3. Полковник Смит уехал на Сицилию. articles with personal names and miscellaneous proper names
- 4. **А что, если** она **вдруг** нарушит свое обещание?

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in simple sentences beginning with 'and what if'

5. Вероятно, завтра им предложат новый контракт.

Use a modal expression in the meaning of 'probability', refer the action to the future and remember that the subject is acted upon

6. **Стрэнд** – центральная улица **Лондона**, соединяющая район **Вестминстер** с **Сити**.

articles with miscellaneous proper names

7. **Если** цены **упадут**, мы **купим** а new TV.

Use tense forms, the first future action is found in an adverbial clause of condition

8. Едва она зашла в дом, как зазвонил телефон.

Use tense forms and inverted word order

9. Он **не хочет** меня слушать.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'refusal to perform an action'

10. Если бы он решил эту проблему пару дней назад, мы бы не переживали сейчас.

Use the Oblique Moods we find in complex sentences with adverbial clauses of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference

Card 8

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

The hippies **suggested** they (1) <u>form</u> a commune and share everything, but they were so chilled and laid back, everybody talked over them...

Boomeee!!! Aunty Ekio shouted when she had (2) <u>a</u> broken nail, bring me the file *now-now*, even though Bummi (3) <u>might be eating</u>, or doing her schoolwork, or making sure the two boys took their bath without killing each other...

She wished Augustine was there to witness their little girl making it, she also **wished** Carole (4) <u>had come</u> home to continue celebrations with the pot of bush stew Bummi had cooked specially, hoping that now her daughter had graduated...

Courtney (5) <u>replied</u> that Roxane Gay warned against the idea of playing 'privilege Olympics' and wrote in *Bad Feminist* that privilege is relative and contextual, and I agree, Yazz, I mean, where does it all end? Is Obama less privileged than a white hillbilly growing up in a trailer park with a junkie single mother and a jailbird father? Is a severely disabled person more privileged than a Syrian asylum-seeker (6) who's <u>been tortured</u>? Roxane argues that we (7) <u>have to find</u> a new discourse for discussing (8) <u>__</u> inequality.

- 1. **Form** is ... (the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive I) form of the verb **to form** which is used in the ... (subject/object/predicative/attributive/attributive-appositive) clause if a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion) in the main clause.
- 2. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural) modified by the ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute **broken**.
- 3. **Might be eating** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/Subjunctive II form) which consists of the modal verb **might** used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive II/Past Simple Tense) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/probability/certainty/chances/doubt) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Continuous Tense form/non-perfect continuous infinitive active) **be eating** which shows that the action is (simultaneous with/prior to) the moment of speaking.
- 4. **Had come** is ... (the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II) form which is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after **wished** in the main clause. The ... (non-perfect/perfect) form of ... (the Past Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) **wished**.
- 5. **Replied** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to reply** used to denote a/an ... (single past event/unreal action/habitual past state).
- 6. **Has been tortured** is ... (the Present Perfect Tense/the Present Perfect Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II) ... (active/passive) form the verb **to torture** used to denote a/an ... (past action/unreal past action/past action connected in its result with the present).
- 7. Have to find is ... (Subjunctive II form/a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Simple Tense form/the Present Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb have to used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Present Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/strong obligation/obligation coming from external authority) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) find. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

8. The ... (*zero/indefinite/definite*) article is used in its ... (*classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective*) function with a/an ... (*countable/uncountable*) ... (*concrete/abstract*) noun.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. Наши друзья **предложили**, чтобы Джон организовал a picnic on Sunday.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in nominal clauses after modal meaning in the main clause

2. И что они могут так долго обсуждать?

Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'emotional colouring'

3. Я вспомнил вчера, где меня прооперировали.

Use tense forms, observe the rules of the sequence of tenses and remember that the second subject is acted upon

4. Жаль, что у меня не веселые соседи.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause

- 5. **Бедный Стивен** работает по **12 часов в день**. articles with personal names and countable nouns
- 6. Он попросил рассказать ему о **Великих озерах** и **Северном Полярном круге**.

articles with geographical names

7. Чему быть, того не миновать.

Use a set expression with a modal verb

8. **Если бы** он не объяснил свое поведение, я **бы** не стал с ним разговаривать.

Use the Oblique Moods we find in complex sentences with adverbial clauses of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference

9. Когда я **проснулся**, все **уже ушли** на работу.

Use tense forms, the second past action was completed before the first one

10. Мне не нужно было звонить Энн и я начал готовить ужин.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'absence of necessity'

Card 9

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'It's bad enough (1) I'<u>ll have to mow</u> the lawn every week!' Michael had said. Karen wriggled away from Pauline and set off toward the poolside. Pauline (2) <u>slid</u> back in her recliner and (2) <u>closed</u> her eyes. (3) <u>The</u> sun was still gentle, not yet a blast of heat the way it would be later in the day. A breeze was softly brushing her skin, and the smell of (4) __ warm chlorine³ made her feel limp and languid, **as if** she (5) <u>were</u> actually <u>floating</u> in the water.

Mimi was debating what to cook for dinner.

'I don't mind the *work* of meals; I mind thinking up what to fix,' Joan said. 'Sometimes I **wish** somebody (6) <u>would</u> just <u>hand</u> me a week's menu. 'Here,' they'd say. 'It's Monday; cook this.''

³ [ˈklɔːriːn] - хлор.

'I really (7) <u>should use</u> that roast (8) that's <u>been sitting</u> in the freezer,' Mimi went on. 'I'm not even sure it's any good anymore.'

- 1. Will have to mow is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Future Simple Tense form/the Future Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb will have to used in its ... (non-perfect/Future Simple Tense/Future Perfect Tense/Subjunctive II) form in the meaning of ... (deduction/strong obligation/obligation coming from external authority) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) mow. Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 2. **Slid** and **closed** are ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) forms of the verbs **to slide** and **to close** used to denote a/an/- ... (succession of past events/unreal actions/habitual past actions).
- 3. The ... (*zero/indefinite/definite*) article is used in its ... (*classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective*) function with a/an ... (*countable/uncountable*) noun in the (*singular/plural*) denoting a unique object.
- 4. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) ... (concrete/abstract) noun modified by a ... (descriptive/limiting) attribute.
- 5. **Were floating** is ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to float** which is used in the ... (predicative clause/adverbial clause of comparison) of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as if.** The ... (non-perfect/perfect) continuous form of ... (the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II) shows that the ... (unreal/problematic) action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to) **made**.
- 6. **Would hand** is ... (Subjunctive II/a compound verbal modal predicate/the Conditional Mood) which consists of the modal verb **would** used in its ... (Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II/Conditional Mood) form in the meaning of ... (regret/annoyance) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) **hand**. **Would hand** is used in the ... (predicative/attributive/object/subject) clause of a complex sentence after **wish** in the main clause. The action is ... (simultaneous with/prior to/posterior to) **wish**.
- 7. **Should use** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Suppositional Mood form/the Conditional Mood form) which consists of the modal verb **should** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form/used in its Suppositional Mood form/used in its Conditional Mood form) in the meaning of ... (probability/orders and instructions/advice (recommendation)) and the ... (non-perfect verb/Present Simple Tense form/non-perfect common infinitive active) **use** referring the action to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 8. **Has been sitting** is ... (the Present Perfect Tense/the Present Perfect Passive Tense/the Present Perfect Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II perfect continuous) form of the verb **to sit** used to denote an ... (action that started at

some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now/action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and has just stopped with visible present results/unreal durable action).

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. Нам **зря** приготовили ужин, папа заказал пиццу.

Use the modal verb that has the meaning of 'absence of necessity with an action performed though it wasn't necessary'

- 2. Он **бы предпочел**, чтобы они **предложили** ему работать за рубежом. Use the modal expression of preference in the main clause and one of the Oblique Moods we find in object clauses after it
 - 3. У него уже **три дня держится** высокая температура.

Use a tense form, the state began in the past, lasted up till the moment of speaking

4. Мне нравится **древняя скульптура** и **французская литература XVII века**.

articles with abstract nouns

5. Они **не могли не** смеяться, когда рассказывали такой спешной анекдот.

Use a set expression with a modal verb and the Passive Voice in the second clause, the second action is durable

6. Японцы говорят на японском.

articles with words denoting plural personal entities and languages

7. Я **бы** приготовил ужин, **если бы** не моя диета.

Use one of the Oblique Moods we find in simple sentences beginning with 'but for'

8. **Не может быть, чтобы** вы поссорились!

Use the modal verb in the meaning of 'negative deduction'

9. Жаль, что сейчас не идет дождь.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause

10. Он **рассказа**л ей историю, которую она никогда **раньше не слышала**.

Use tense forms, observe the rules of the sequence of tenses

Card 10

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'Somebody (1) <u>call</u> the emergency squad!' she cried.

She (2) <u>loosened</u> his tie, (2) <u>folded</u> it, and (2) <u>worked</u> it between his grinding teeth.

'Dr Fox. Flow about a little help?' Fox didn't budge. He shook his head. 'I (3) can't! I've never practised.' 'Great,' Gin muttered.

Suddenly (4) __ Senator Marsden was at her side.

'Does he have a history of seizures?' Gin asked Senator Marsden as they released their hold.

'Not that I know of. But then again, that's not something you broadcast in public life.' Right. Voters were probably funny about voting for an epileptic. But what about the bizarre paranoid behaviour just before the seizure?

The E.M.Ts arrived then. As they started an IV drip and loaded Senator Vincent on the stretcher, Gin told them he'd suffered a grand mal seizure and **suggested** they (5) <u>call</u> ahead and have (6) <u>a</u> neurologist waiting.

'How long will that take?' Gin said, her heart sinking. She'd just started this job last week, now it (7) was evaporating before her eyes.

'Could be a while.' Gin's expression (8) must have revealed her dismay.

Choose the right alternatives:

- 1. **Call** is ... (the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive I) form of the verb **to call** which is used in a ... (simple sentence/complex sentence) with ... (an indefinite pronoun as a subject/implied condition) to ... (sound polite/give a command/express regret).
- 2. **Loosened**, **folded** and **worked** are ... (the Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II) forms of the verbs **to loosen**, **to fold** and **to work** used to denote a/an/- ... (succession of past events/unreal actions/habitual past actions).
- 3. **Can't** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/a modal verb) used in its ... (non-perfect/Present Simple Tense/Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive I) form in the meaning of ... (negative deduction/deduction/chances/general possibility/ability). Time reference is to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).
- 4. The ... (*zero/indefinite/definite*) article is used with a/an ... (*countable/abstract /proper*) noun denoting a ... (*personal name preceded by a title/family name*).
- 5. *Call* is ... (the Present Simple Tense/Subjunctive I) form of the verb **to** *call* which is used in the ... (subject/object/predicative/attributive/attributive-appositive) clause of a complex sentence after ... (modal meaning/emotion) in the main clause.
- 6. The ... (zero/indefinite/definite) article is used in its ... (classifying/generic/specifying/numerical/aspective) function with a/an ... (countable/uncountable) noun in the ... (singular/plural).
- 7. **Was evaporating** is ... (the Past Simple Tense/the Past Continuous Tense/Subjunctive II) form of the verb **to evaporate** used to denote a/an ... (past action of unusual frequency/action in progress at a definite moment in the past).
- 8. **Must have revealed** is ... (a compound verbal modal predicate/the Present Perfect Tense form) which consists of the modal verb **must** ... (-/used in its non-perfect form/used in its Present Simple Tense form) in the meaning of ... (strong obligation/chances/certainty/probability/deduction/emphatic advice) and the ... (perfect common infinitive active/perfect verb/Present Perfect Tense form) **have revealed** which refers the state to the ... (past/moment of speaking/future).

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. **Возможно**, он заболел. Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'chances'

2. Мы **бы** так не работали сегодня, **если бы** вчера подписали все документы.

Use the Oblique Moods we find in complex sentences with adverbial clauses of unreal condition; pay attention to time reference

3. Французы не понимают англичан.

articles with words denoting plural personal entities

4. Рискнешь рассказать ей правду?

Use the verb that has the meaning of 'courage'

- 5. Поехали на **Балканский полуостров**! Или позагораем на **Ривьере**? articles with geographical names
- 6. С ним уже полчаса никто не разговаривает.

Use a tense form, the action began in the past, lasted up till the moment of speaking and is still going on, the subject is acted upon

7. Жаль, что никто не перевел третью главу этой книги.

Use one of the Oblique Moods that we find in object clauses after 'wish' in the main clause

8. Он рассказал нам, что давно мечтает увидеть Париж.

Use tense forms, observe the rules of the sequence of tenses, articles with proper names

9. Он мог бы открыть дверь, но не захотел.

Use a modal verb in the meaning of 'unreal conditional ability'

10. Пусть вам сопутствует удача!

Use a set expression with one of the Oblique Moods

Key to Level 1

Card 1

١.

- 1. Subjunctive II, adverbial clause of comparison, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, simultaneous with
 - 2. the Past Simple Tense, habitual past state
 - 3. indefinite, numerical, countable, singular, time
- 4. Subjunctive II, object, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, simultaneous
- 5. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before another past action
 - 6. definite, specifying, countable, singular, restrictive
- 7. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, deduction, non-perfect common infinitive active, moment of speaking
- 8. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, advice/criticism, perfect common infinitive active, past

II.

- 1. I wish he had listened to...
- 2. We may/might/could have booked...

- 3. Last year he would often go to bed...
- 4. If we had been late then, Granny would have got really upset.
- 5. We were to have called...
- 6. I don't want to go to the Baltic Sea...
- 7. I was greeted by an angry Ann.
- 8. While they are discussing ... we'll have...
- 9. I would rather they didn't call me...
- 10. I have learnt Grammar and I am ready...

I.

- 1. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, deduction, perfect common infinitive active, past
 - 2. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
 - 3. definite, specifying, countable, singular, restrictive
- 4. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense, general possibility, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 5. the Conditional Mood, simple, to sound polite/with implied condition, non-perfect, the Conditional Mood, unreal, simultaneous with
 - 6. the Past Simple Tense, succession of past actions
- 7. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before another past action
- 8. Subjunctive II form, object, perfect, Subjunctive II form, unreal, prior to

II.

- 1. I wish the tickets had been sold out...
- 2. If we were competing I would win.
- 3. I can't help laughing when I read...
- 4. We had better stop worrying.
- 5. We must have failed to hear...
- 6. When we have built the house, we will/shall go on holiday.
- 7. **By the moment** John **woke up** his mum **had cooked** breakfast/had already cooked breakfast.
 - 8. I don't want to dine at McDonalds, I want to go to the Vasilki.
 - 9. We were to have set...
 - 10. He was met by a cold and unfamiliar Venice.

Card 3

I.

- 1. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense, general possibility, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 2. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense/Subjunctive II, chances, non-perfect common infinitives active, posterior

- 3. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
 - 4. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
- 5. Subjunctive II continuous, predicative clause, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, simultaneous with
- 6. the Past Perfect Continuous Tense, past action of a certain duration that was still in progress at a given moment in the past
 - 7. zero, classifying, countable, plural
 - 8. Subjunctive I, simple, wish

- 1. What is the length of the Great Wall of China?
- 2. While we were discussing the movie it started snowing.
- 3. They must have forgotten the books at home.
- 4. I wish they had bought...
- 5. Prime Minister Johnson met Queen Elizabeth the second.
- 6. I was to have come to the doctor...
- 7. I haven't seen a cat since I came here.
- 8. If he flew to Paris he would bring presents to children. OR If he had flown to Paris he would have brought presents to children.
 - 9. Why are you laughing? You could/might stop laughing...
 - 10. She looks as if/as though she didn't understand me.

Card 4

I.

- 1. the Conditional Mood form, main clause of a complex sentence, non-perfect, Conditional Mood, unreal, simultaneous with
 - 2. the Past Simple Tense, single past event
 - 3. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
 - 4. definite, generic, substantivized adjective
- 5. a compound verbal modal predicate, Present Simple Tense, ability, non-perfect common infinitive active, moment of speaking
- 6. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 7. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, past
- 8. the Suppositional Mood, adverbial clause of condition, non-perfect passive, Suppositional Mood, problematic, posterior to, is acted upon

II.

- 1. ... we needn't have hurried.
- 2. She has been looking for her ancestors in Italy for two years already.
- 3. She wasn't sure if/whether he would come to her concert.
- 4. The Democrats have won the election.
- 5. It is **important** that every child **eat/should eat** less sweets and crisps.
- 6. I had to stay and do the dishes...

- 7. But for my parents I wouldn't know...
- 8. The elderly parents of **poor John** wanted him to get **a good education** at university.
 - 9. What is to become of me?
 - 10. I wish he had verified his schedule.

١.

- 1. a modal verb, Present Simple Tense, request, moment of speaking/future
 - 2. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
 - 3. definite, specifying, countable, plural, limiting
- 4. the Present Perfect Tense form, past action connected in its result with the present
- 5. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, advice (recommendation), perfect common infinitive active, past
 - 6. the Past Simple Tense, single past state
- 7. the Conditional Mood form, main clause of a complex sentence, an adverbial clause of unreal condition, perfect, the Conditional Mood, unreal, prior to
 - 8. Subjunctive II form, object, perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, prior to

II.

- 1. It is strange that you shouldn't have invited John.
- 2. They can't/couldn't have forgotten about our meeting.
- 3. Fear paralysed him. OR He was paralysed by fear.
- 4. They must have reached home. OR They will have reached home.
- 5. I have never dived before.
- 6. I was very worried lest we should be late/lest we be late.
- 7. But for the taxi I would never have reached the airport on time.
- 8. I dream/am dreaming about visiting the British Museum and walking along London bridge.
 - 9. The linen has been washed, you can hang it out.
- 10. The pills **are to be taken** twice a day after meals if you **are to recover** soon.

Card 6

١.

- 1. a compound verbal modal predicate, used in its Present Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, moment of speaking
- 2. the Present Perfect Tense form, incomplete action that started in the past and is still happening in the present with emphasis on the result of the activity
 - 3. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 4. Subjunctive II form, object, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, posterior

- 5. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress in the past
- 6. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting
- 7. Subjunctive II form, object/indirect question, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, simultaneous with
- 8. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense, general possibility, non-perfect common infinitive, passive, past

- 1. He can't/couldn't have bought...
- 2. I wish there were sales now. OR I wish they had sales now.
- 3. I really like French rap and I do not like American jazz at all.
- 4. I wouldn't like to quarrel with my best friend.
- 5. While the fence was being mended the old house collapsed.
- 6. The Republicans have lost the election.
- 7. You shouldn't have shown him that price list.
- 8. How long have you been living in this town/city?
- 9. We were to have discussed it yesterday...
- 10. Should the prices drop, be quick to buy... OR If the prices should drop, be quick to buy...

Card 7

I.

- 1. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, deduction, perfect common infinitive active, past
- 2. the Past Perfect Tense, past action completed before another past action
- 3. a compound verbal modal predicate, simple sentence, modal expression, Subjunctive II, advice, non-perfect common infinitive, moment of speaking/future
 - 4. the Past Simple Tense, habitual past state
 - 5. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 6. the Conditional Mood, main clause of a complex sentence, perfect, the Conditional Mood, unreal, prior to
 - 7. definite, specifying, singular, limiting
- 8. a compound verbal modal predicate, Past Simple Tense, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, past

II.

- 1. I am not to go outside if I am to recover soon.
- 2. We had better not drink...
- 3. Colonel Smith has flown to Sicily.
- 4. And what if she should break her promise?
- 5. They are likely to be offered a new contract tomorrow.
- 6. **The Strand** is the central street of **London** which connects **Westminster** (the City of Westminster) with **the City**.
 - 7. If the prices drop we will/shall buy ...
- 8. Hardly had she entered the house when the phone rang. OR No sooner had she entered the house than the phone rang.

- 9. He won't listen to me.
- 10. If he had solved the problem a couple of days ago we wouldn't be so worried now. OR Had he solved the problem a couple of days ago we wouldn't be so worried now.

Ι.

- 1. Subjunctive I, object, modal meaning
- 2. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular, descriptive
- 3. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II, chances, non-perfect continuous infinitive active, simultaneous with
 - 4. Subjunctive II, object, perfect, Subjunctive II, prior to
 - 5. the Past Simple Tense, single past event
- 6. the Present Perfect Continuous Tense, passive, past action connected in its result with the present
- 7. a compound verbal modal predicate, Present Simple Tense, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, moment of speaking/future
 - 8. zero, generic, uncountable, abstract

II.

- 1. Our friends suggested that John organise/should organise...
- 2. What can/could they have been discussing for so long?
- 3. I remembered yesterday where I had been operated on.
- 4. I wish I had merry neighbours.
- 5. Poor Stephen works 12 hours a day.
- 6. He asked his brother to tell him about the Great Lakes and the Arctic Circle.
 - 7. What will be will be.
- 8. If he hadn't explained himself I wouldn't talk/wouldn't have talked to him.
 - 9. When I woke up everybody had gone to work.
- 10. I didn't have to call/didn't need to call Ann and I started cooking dinner.

Card 9

١.

- 1. a compound verbal modal predicate, Future Simple Tense, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect common infinitive active, future
 - 2. the Past Simple Tense, succession of past events
 - 3. definite, specifying, countable, singular
 - 4. zero, generic, uncountable, concrete, descriptive
- 5. Subjunctive II, adverbial clause of comparison, non-perfect, Subjunctive II, unreal, simultaneous with
- 6. a compound verbal modal predicate, Subjunctive II, annoyance, non-perfect common infinitive active, object, posterior to

- 7. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, advice (recommendation), non-perfect common infinitive active, moment of speaking/future
- 8. the Present Perfect Continuous Tense, action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now

- 1. We needn't have cooked dinner, father ordered/had ordered pizza.
- 2. He would rather they had offered/offered him to work abroad.
- 3. He has been running a fever for three days already.
- 4. I like ancient sculpture and the French literature of the seventeenth century.
- 5. They **couldn't help laughing** when such a funny anecdote **was being told**.
 - 6. The Japanese speak Japanese.
 - 7. But for my diet I would cook dinner.
 - 8. You can't/couldn't have guarrelled!
 - 9. I wish it were raining now.
 - 10. He told her a story she had never heard before.

Card 10

Ι.

- 1. Subjunctive I, simple sentence, an indefinite pronoun as a subject, give a command
 - 2. the Past Simple Tense, succession of past events
 - 3. a modal verb, Present Simple Tense, ability, moment of speaking
 - 4. zero, proper, personal name preceded by a title
 - 5. Subjunctive I, object, modal meaning
 - 6. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
- 7. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 8. a compound verbal modal predicate, -, deduction, perfect common infinitive active, past

II.

- 1. He may/might/could have fallen ill.
- 2. We **wouldn't be working** today **if** we **had signed** all the documents yesterday.
 - 3. The French do not understand the English.
 - 4. I dare you to tell her the truth.
- 5. Let's go to the Balkan Peninsula. Or shall we sunbathe on the Riviera?
 - 6. He hasn't been talked to for half an hour.
 - 7. I wish someone had translated the third chapter of the book.
 - 8. He told us that he had long been dreaming to see Paris.
 - 9. He **could have opened** the door but he didn't want to.
 - 10. Success attend you!

LEVEL 2

Card 11

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

She didn't nod in rhythm; it was a slow, stiff, stately nodding, **as if** she (1) were merely agreeing with the announcer's taste in music.

On (2) the **opposite** end of the sofa, Michael sat reading the paper. It was the Saturday paper, slimmer than on other days, with (3) __ small-print headlines that Pauline (4) couldn't read from where she sat. She was leafing through a *Ladies' Home Journal* in the armchair across the room. All she could see of Michael were his fingers at either edge of the paper and his long, thin, gray-clad legs and heavy brown shoes.

'Maybe I should use a bigger needle for this work,' Mother Anton told Pauline. 'These soles are double-layered. I'm having trouble poking through.'

(5) 'Shall I bring you one?' Pauline asked. Anyhow, her magazine (6) was failing to hold her attention.

'No, wait a bit; let's see how it goes.'

Behind his paper, Michael yawned aloud. Pauline could tell that the yawn was manufactured. He (7) <u>folded</u> his paper, (7) <u>set</u> it aside, and (7) <u>stretched</u> extravagantly. 'Aaah,' he said, yawning once again. 'Hoo, I'm bushed. Guess it's time I (8) went to bed.'

Complete the answer:

- 1. *Were agreeing* is ... non-perfect continuous used in the ... clause ... of a complex sentence after the conjunction *as if*. The ... action is ... *was*.
- 2. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
- 3. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... modified by ... attributes.
- 4. *Couldn't read* is a ... which consists of the ... *couldn't* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *read*. Time reference is to the ...
- *5.* **Shall bring** is a ... which consists of ... **shall** in the meaning ... and the ... **bring**. Time reference is to the ...
 - 6. *Was failing* is ... form used to denote ...
 - 7. *Folded*, *set*, *stretched* are ... forms... used to denote ...
- 8. **Went** is ... non-perfect used in the ... clause after **it's time** in the main clause. The action is ... **is**.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. **Жаль**, что у Вас недостаточно опыта для этой должности. one of the Oblique Moods that expresses regret
- 2. **Неужели** они разбили окно? *doubt*
- 3. **Возможно**, мы не закрыли дверь. *chances*

- 4. Не успела она открыть окно, как начался дождь.
- inverted word order with tense forms
- 5. Это не он. Он просто **не смог бы** это сделать. *unreal conditional ability*
- 6. Мы не успели посетить **Гайд-парк**. articles with names of parks
- 7. **Счастливые**, как правило, добры. articles with substantivized adjectives
- 8. Я **бы предпочел** никогда не узнать правды. preference with one of the Oblique Moods
- 9. Утро было морозным, и машина **никак не заводилась**. *refusal to perform an action*
- 10. **Вчера в это время** я плавала в море. an action in progress at a definite moment in the past

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

She was very serious now. The smile (1) <u>had gone</u>. 'I **wish** you (2) <u>were not deciding</u> too soon. You can't judge people by what they do. If you judge them at all, it must be by what they are.'

'And you (3) <u>have to know</u> them for that,' she added gently. 'Goodbye, Mr Marlowe. **If** you (4) <u>should change</u> your mind –' She opened her bag quickly and gave me (5) a card – 'and thank you for being here.'

She nodded to Spencer and walked away. I saw (6) the last flicker of her white linen skirt as she turned the corner. Then I eased myself down into the booth and grabbed the gin and orange.

Spencer (7) was watching me. There was something hard in his eyes.

'Nice work,' I said, 'but you (8) <u>ought to have looked</u> at her once in a while. A dream like that doesn't sit across the room from you for twenty minutes without your even noticing.'

Complete the answer:

- 1. *Had gone* is ... form used to denote ...
- 2. *Were not deciding* is ... continuous used in the ... clause of a complex sentence after *wish* in the main clause. The ... action is ... *wish*.
- 3. *Have to know* is a ... which consists of the ... *have to* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *know*. Time reference is to the ...
- 4. **Should change** is ... non-perfect used in the ... clause of ... condition. The ... action refers to the ...
 - 5. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ...
- 6. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
 - 7. *Was watching* is ... form used to denote ...

8. *Ought to have looked* is a ... which consists of the ... *ought to* in the meaning of ... and the ... *have looked* referring the action to the ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. На **востоке Канады** нашли **золото**. articles with geographical names and uncountable concrete nouns
- 2. **Не может быть, чтобы** ты его видел вчера. Его сейчас нет в Минске. *negative deduction*
- 3. Он **спросил, приду ли** я поговорить с ним. *sequence of tenses*
- 4. **Если вдруг возникнет** какая-нибудь трудность, **позвони** мне тотчас же. one of the Oblique Moods that expresses a highly unlikely action, the Imperative Mood
 - 5. **Упрямство** полезная черта. articles with uncountable abstract nouns
 - 6. Я **бы предпоче**л, чтобы ты **не спрашива**л его об этом. preference with one of the Oblique Moods
 - 7. Тебе **должно быть** стыдно за своё поведение. *obligation/duty*
- 8. **Возможно**, он звонил мне вчера. Я отключил телефон и пропустил все звонки.

chances

- 9. Пока обсуждались новости, я тихо вышел из комнаты. a past durable action interrupted by a short one, the first subject is acted upon
 - 10. Тебе **бы лучше** поехать домой, выпить горячего чаю и лечь в постель. advice with one of the Oblique Moods

Card 13

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

But if there had been (1) <u>a</u> reply, there was a chance that Duncan (2) <u>might have seen</u> it, and easily the best thing in her life at the moment was her secret. It had been the best thing even yesterday, when all she'd received were two functional but still amazing messages that gave very little away, but now she had information that Duncan would have regarded as the key to unlocking the mysteries of (3) <u>the</u> universe. She **would rather** he (4) <u>did not know</u> about the key.

The night before, Duncan (5) <u>had come</u> home late and smelling of drink; he was monosyllabic, curt even, when she'd asked him about his day. He'd fallen asleep quickly, but she had lain awake, listening to him snoring and not liking him. Everyone disliked their partners at some time or another, she knew that. But she'd spent her hours in the dark wondering whether she'd ever liked him. (6) <u>Would</u> it really <u>have been</u> so much worse to spend those years alone? Why (7) <u>did</u> there <u>have to be</u> someone else in the room while she (8) <u>was eating</u>, watching TV, sleeping?

Complete the answer:

- 1. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ...
- 2. *Might have seen* is ... a ... which consists of the ... *might* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *have seen* referring the action to the ...
- 3. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... The specification is carried out by means of the ... of the noun: it denotes a ... object.
- 4. *Did not know* is ... perfect used in the ... of a ... sentence after *would rather* in the ... clause. The ... action is ... the moment of speaking.
 - 5. *Had come* is ... form used to denote ...
- 6. *Would have been* is ... in its ... form. It is used in a ... with ... Time reference is to the ...
- 7. *Did have to be* is a ... which consists of the ... *did have to* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *be*. Time reference is to the ...
 - 8. *Was eating* is ... form used to denote ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. **Королева Елизавета** посетила **Олипийские игры.** articles with personal names and miscellaneous proper names
- 2. **Жаль**, что он не был с нами вчера. one of the Oblique Moods that expresses regret
- 3. Он **отказывается** обсуждать это с нами. refusal to perform an action
- 4. **Если** я **поеду** в отпуск, **привезу** тебе сувенир. two real future actions, one of them is in an adverbial clause of condition
- 5. MHe **пришлось** поговорить с ними. *obligation coming from external authority*
- 6. Он так бледен, **словно** увидел шестой палец на своей руке. *the Oblique Mood*
- 7. Это была **любовь с первого взгляда**.

articles with abstract nouns

- 8. Когда посуда **была помыта**, мы **пошли** смотреть фильм. *two real past actions, the first subject is acted upon*
- 9. **Возможно**, мы поспешили с выводами. *chances*
- 10. Достаточно сказать, что это самый веселый фильм из всех, что я видел.

a formulaic expression, a tense form

Card 14

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'His hip has been acting up,' Pauline explained to his mother. 'I'll bet it's going to snow. Did you notice how (1) he's been walking today? And he (2) couldn't finish his exercises this morning.' She said it **as if** he (3) weren't in the room, as if she didn't know (4) the real cause **of** his behaviour.

And his mother went along with it. 'Oh,' she said, 'I can *feel* the snow! Every joint in my body is giving me fits.'

- 'Isn't it time you (5) took your pills?' Pauline asked her.
- 'I forgot! Thanks for reminding me.'
- 'I'll fetch them. You sit still.'
- 'No, no! Stay where you are!'
- Like (6) __ partners in some elaborate dance, both women half-stood and appeared to curtsy to each other. Then Pauline sat back down and Michael's mother (7) <u>rose</u> all the way and (7) <u>shuffled</u> out of the kitchen.
- 'I (8) <u>should have thought</u> to remind her earlier,' Pauline told Michael. 'It's a whole lot easier to stave off pain than to cure it once it's set in.'

Complete the answer:

- 1. *Has been walking* is ... form used to denote ...
- 2. *Couldn't finish* is a ... which consists of the ... *couldn't* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *finish*. Time reference is to the ...
- 3. *Weren't* is ... in its ... form used in the ... of a ... sentence after the conjunction *as if*. The ... action is ... *said*.
- 4. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
- 5. **Took** is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after **isn't it time** in the ... clause. The action is ... **isn't**.
- 6. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
 - 7. **Rose** and **shuffled** are ... forms used to denote ...
- 8. **Should have thought** is a ... which consists of the ... **should** in the meaning of ... and the ... **have thought** referring the action to the ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. **Римская империя** перестала существовать давным давно. articles with miscellaneous proper names
- 2. Он проснулся и понял, что **пора** ему купить новый будильник. *the Oblique Mood*
- 3. Ты **должен был** все ей объяснить. Почему ты это не сделал? an unfulfilled past obligation
- 4. Я не одобряю твою покупку. Я **бы предпочел** купить новую машину. preference with one of the Oblique Moods
- 5. Я **не помнил, закрыл ли** я дверь на ключ. *sequence of tenses*
- 6. Ты **зря** столько хлеба купил, но ничего, мы теперь всех птичек покормим.

absence of necessity with an action performed though unnecessary

- 7. **Гнев** вреден для здоровья, а **радость** полезна. *articles with uncountable abstract nouns*
- 8. **Как только я сдам** экзамены, **поеду** к бабушке в деревню. two real future actions the first is in an adverbial clause of time
- 9. **Неужели** ему повысили зарплату? *doubt*
- 10. Жаль, что он не смог перевести книгу вовремя. one of the Oblique Moods that expresses regret

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

Then after breakfast, when he **suggested** she (1) <u>come</u> with them to Breakneck Hill, she said she couldn't. 'It's the day of Ed's concert, remember?' she said.

Michael didn't remember. He suspected her of making it up. He said, 'A concert at this hour?'

'At one p.m. (2) He's giving a cello recital. So, I guess we should just get together afterward, don't you agree? You'll drop off Pagan at, what, it will be noon by then, I imagine; and since (3) you'll have to pick him up again in just another hour or two, it makes sense that we go our separate ways and then meet later.'

'Fine,' Michael said. 'It (4) would be a sensible thing to do.'

She drew in a breath to speak, but he (5) <u>turned</u> away briskly and (5) <u>went</u> to fetch his jacket.

At Pauline's house the front walk was dry now – a satisfaction. Pagan bounded up to the door and disappeared inside while Michael waited at the wheel. A few minutes later Pagan reemerged, wearing black nylon gloves and big rubber boots with (6) the clasps unfastened. He set off, jingling, toward the carport, and Pauline opened the storm door and called after him, 'Don't forget your scarf!'

'I (7) can't wear (8) a scarf when I'm sledding!'

Complete the answer:

- 1. *Come* is ... used in the ... of a ... sentence after ... in the ... clause.
- 2. *Is giving* is ... form used to denote ...
- 3. *Will have to pick* is a ... which consists of the ... *will have to* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *pick*. Time reference is to the ...
- 4. **Would be** is ... in its ... form. It is used in a ... with ... Time reference is to the ... or ...
 - 5. *Turned* and *went* are ... forms used to denote ...
- 6. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... The specification is carried out by means of the ...

The ... article ... function ... noun ... attribute.

- 7. *Can't wear* is a ... which consists of the ... *can't* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *wear*. Time reference is to the ...
 - 8. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Он **часто ходил** в театр в прошлом году. *a habitual past action, use a modal verb*
- 2. Давайте обсудим **Средневековую Европу** и **древний Рим**. articles with miscellaneous proper names
- 3. Джон **настоял**, чтобы бумаги были отправлены немедленно. one of the Oblique Moods that we find after modal meaning
- 4. **Вероятно**, я потеряла сережку в музее. Мы больше никуда не ходили вчера.

deduction

- 5. Мне **бы хотелось**, чтобы их дом был поближе. wish with one of the Oblique Moods
- 6. Он получил **хорошее образование**. *articles with abstract nouns*
- 7. Он **рассказал** нам, что его **повысили**. sequence of tenses, 'he' is acted upon
- 8. **С тех пор как** мы **живем** в этом доме, мы **дружим** с **семьей Смитов**.

two parallel real actions that began in the past, lasted till the moment of speaking and are still true

- 9. Если он хочет сдать экзамен, ему **лучше** немедленно начинать повторять модальные глаголы.
- a set expression with a modal verb after 'if', advice with one of the Oblique Moods
- 10. **Если бы** он принял вовремя лекарство, сейчас **бы** ему не болело так сильно горло.

unreal actions, the Oblique Moods

Card 16

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

It was true that these days, Pagan was at a disadvantage – shuttled between two homes, not entirely a part of either neighbourhood. In fact, you (1) <u>couldn't call</u> Michael's area a neighbourhood at all. His apartment building (2) <u>was inhabited</u> by (3) __ elderly widows and young married couples just starting out, and everything around it was commercial.

'I'll tell you what,' he said. 'As soon as (4) we'<u>ve finished</u> eating, I'll run you by Grandma's to pick up your sled and then I'll drop you at Breakneck Hill.'

'Really? Great! I've already finished eating.'

'Well, I haven't,' Michael said, and he reached deliberately for the syrup pitcher. 'So, I **suggest** you (5) <u>fortify</u> yourself with another waffle.'

To his surprise, Pagan took his advice. (6) <u>The</u> prospect of joining his friends had put him in a better mood, apparently, because he ate two more waffles and drank a second mug of cocoa, and when Anna asked him what kind of sled he had, he embarked on a lengthy monologue about various types of snow equipment. 'Rick, now, he's got this really cool number from Sweden and you (7) <u>should see</u> the speed he makes! But it cost a bundle, I bet.' Anna listened, smiling, taking occasional sips of coffee. She was good at talking with young people. She seemed to view them as interesting foreigners; she asked questions about their habits, their music, their leisure activities **as if** she (8) <u>were writing</u> a guidebook.

Complete the answer:

- 1. *Couldn't call* is a ... which consists of the ... *couldn't* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *call*. Time reference is to the ...
 - 2. *Was inhabited* is ... form used to denote ...

- 3. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... modified by a ... attribute.
 - 4. *Have finished* is ... form used to denote ...
 - 5. *Fortify* is ... used in the ... of a ... sentence after ... in the ... clause.
- 6. The \dots article is used in its \dots function with a/an \dots noun in the \dots modified by a \dots of-phrase.
- 7. **Should see** is a ... which consists of the ... **should** in the meaning of ... and the ... **see**. Time reference is to the ... or ...
- 8. *Were writing* is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause ... of a complex sentence after the conjunction *as if*. The ... action is ... *asked*.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Я не хочу ехать на **Каспийское море**, я хочу увидеть **Красное море**. *articles with geographical names*
- 2. Они **предложили**, чтобы Джейн сама подготовила отчет. one of the Oblique Moods that we find after modal meaning
- 3. Почему он уходит? Он **мог бы** присоединиться к нам сейчас, когда **обсуждается** проект.

criticism, 'проект' is acted upon

- 4. 'Вы **должны** выучить все правила к пятнице,' сказала учитель. *order*, *instruction*
- 5. **Жаль**, что он купил груши вместо яблок. regret with one of the Oblique Moods
- 6. Если мы хотим научиться плавать, надо идти в бассейн.
- a set expression with a modal verb, necessity or obligation coming from external authority
 - 7. **Бедный Джон** забыл отправить письмо. articles with personal names
 - 8. **Едва начался** фильм, **как пропало** электричество. *inverted word order with tense forms*
 - 9. **Не может быть, чтобы** он не купил те шорты. *negative deduction*
 - 10. Его **требование**, чтобы ему отправили отчет, было позабыто. one of one of the Oblique Moods that we find after modal meaning

Card 17

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'Now, Polly, leave her alone,' her mother said. 'Elizabeth, honey, I wish (1) you'<u>d take</u> these down to the freezer for me.'

She stacked foil pans into Elizabeth's outstretched arms. They were still warm, almost hot. Elizabeth (2) <u>rested</u> her chin on the uppermost pan and (2) <u>started</u> for the basement. Behind her, (3) <u>a</u> deep meaningful silence linked her mother and Polly.

Most of the basement was a recreation room, which smelled of (4) __ asphalt. A phonograph sat in one corner. When she was still in secretarial school Polly (5) would bring her friends here, and they had danced and drunk Cokes and eaten endless bags of Fritos. Then Carl had proposed to her on that vinyl loveseat in front of the TV. Elizabeth remembered the night it happened – Polly making the announcement, smiling up at Carl as she spoke. She was still the younger sister then; it wasn't until she was married that she somehow bypassed Elizabeth and began exchanging those knowing glances with her mother over Elizabeth's head. She had hugged Elizabeth tightly and suggested they (6) have a double wedding. A what? Elizabeth thought she (7) had lost her mind. By then Elizabeth was in her junior year of college, living at home, and she had brought no boys back with her except the laundromat burglar once and you (8) couldn't count poor sweet Dommie.

Complete the answer:

- 1. **Would take** is a ... which consists of the ... **would** used in its ... form to denote ... and the ... **take** indicating that the action is ... **wish**. It is used in the ... clause of a ... sentence after **wish** in the ... clause.
 - 2. **Rested** and **started** are ... forms used to denote ...
- 3. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an noun modified by ... attributes. A certain ... is meant.
 - 4. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun.
- 5. *Would bring* is a ... which consists of the ... *would* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *bring*. Time reference is to the ...
 - 6. *Have* is ... used in the ... of a ... sentence after ... in the ... clause.
 - 7. *Had lost* is ... form used to denote ...
- 8. *Couldn't count* is a ... which consists of the ... *couldn't* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *count*. Time reference is to the ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Его родители **настояли**, чтобы им прислали ответ. one of the Oblique Moods that we find after modal meaning
- 2. Мне **бы хотелось**, чтобы вы были добрее. wish with one of the Oblique Moods
- 3. Мальчишки остаются мальчишками. a set expression
- 4. Я сходил в **'Одеон'** (*кинотеатр*), прежде чем ехать в **Хитроу** (*аэропорт*).

articles with miscellaneous proper names

- 5. **Любовь матери** творит чудеса. articles with uncountable abstract names
- 6. Мы его **не видели** уже целую неделю. **Наверное**, он уехал в отпуск. an action that began in the past and lasted up till the moment of speaking, deduction
 - 7. **И как** он **смеет** дразнить моего кота? *indignation*

8. Позвони мне, если Джейн не предложит подвезти тебя.

the Imperative Mood, an adverbial clause of condition referring to the future

- 9. Уже поздно. **И где бы это** она **могла** быть все это время? *emotional colouring*
- 10. Если вдруг зайдет соседка, дай ей рецепт пирога.
- a highly unlikely action with one of the Oblique Moods, the Imperative Mood

Card 18

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

Raphie reddened. 'It was a heart murmur, Jessica, nothing more, and keep your voice down,' he hissed.

'You (1) should be resting,' she said more quietly.

'The doctor said I was perfectly normal.'

'Then the doctor needs his head checked. (2) You'<u>ve</u> never <u>been</u> perfectly normal.'

He studied Jessica, her hands wrapped around the mug's cartoon figure as she stared intently into her coffee **as though** it (3) <u>were</u> a crystal ball. How he wished it was; how he **wished** they (4) <u>had</u> the gift of foresight to stop so many of the things they witnessed every day. Her cheeks (5) <u>were</u> pale, a light red rim around her eyes the only giveaway to the morning they'd had.

'Some morning, eh, kiddo?'

Those almond-shaped eyes glistened, but she stopped herself and hardened. She nodded and swallowed the coffee in response. He (6) <u>could tell</u> by her attempt to hide (7) <u>the</u> grimace that it burned, but she took another sip as if in (8) <u>defiance</u>. Standing up even against the coffee.

Complete the answer:

- 1. **Should be resting** is a ... which consists of the ... **should** in the meaning of ... and the ... **be resting**. Time reference is to the ... or ...
 - 2. *Have been* is ... form used to denote ...
- 3. *Were* is ... in its ... form used in the ... clause ... of a complex sentence after the conjunction *as though*. The ... action is ... *stared*.
- 4. *Had* is ... in its ... form used in the ... of a ... sentence after *wished* in the ... clause. The ... action is ... *wished*.
 - 5. *Were* is ... form used to denote ...
- 6. *Could tell* is a ... which consists of the ... *could* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *tell*. Time reference is to the ...
- 7. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ... The specification is carried out by means of the ...
 - 8. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. Он рассказал мне о **Дальнем Востоке** и **Кольском полуострове**. articles with geographical names

2. **Если бы** он был терпеливым человеком, он **бы** не разгневался так сильно вчера.

unreal actions with one of the Oblique Moods

- 3. Это совсем не **та Великобритания**, которую я увидел в 1990. *articles with geographical names*
- 4. Он **пожаловался**, что **чувствует** себя уставшим, и **сказа**л, что **не пойдет** в магазин.

sequence of tenses

- 5. **Не может быть, чтобы** игрушки уже раскупили. *negative deduction*
- 6. **Пока** елку **наряжали**, я **испекла** торт. *tense forms*, *a durable action and a short one*
- 7. Мы **должны были** встретиться в пять, **но** он не пришел на встречу. an unfulfilled plan
- 8. **Жаль**, что он уже подписал все открытки. wish with one of the Oblique Moods
- 9. **Не стоило** вам так откровенничать с ним. *criticism/advice/recommendation*
- 10. **A что, если вдруг** замок сломается? a highly unlikely action with one of the Oblique Moods

Card 19

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'You (1) <u>cannot be</u> serious.' Luke runs his eyes dismissively over it. 'It looks like (2) \underline{a} toy.'

'Well, your one looks like a tank! (3) I'm not pushing that down the street!'

(4) 'I <u>would</u> just <u>point out</u>,' (5) <u>interjects</u> Stuart delicately, 'while applauding both your choices, that neither of these models has the car seat and lie-flat facilities that you were originally seeking.'

'Oh.' I look at the Lulu Guinness stroller. 'Oh, right.'

'Might I **suggest** you (6) <u>regroup</u>, have (7) __ coffee, and work out your needs? You (8) <u>may need</u> more than one vehicle. One for off-roading, one for nipping around the shops.'

Complete the answer:

- 1. *Cannot be* is a ... which consists of the ... *cannot* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *be*. Time reference is to the ...
 - 2. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun in the ...
 - 3. *Am not pushing* is ... form used to denote ...
- 4. **Would point put** is ... in its ... form. It is used in a ... clause of a ... sentence ...
 - 5. *Interjects* is ... form used to denote ...
 - 6. *Regroup* is used in the ... of a ... sentence after ... in the ... clause.
 - 7. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an... noun.
- 8. *May need* is a ... which consists of the ... *may* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *need*. Time reference is to the ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Вам **следовало** признать свою ошибку и извиниться. *criticism/advice/recommendation*
- 2. Я хотела бы увидеть **мост через залив Ферт-оф-Форт**. articles with geographical names
- 3. **A что, если** телефон не успеют доставить вовремя? a highly unlikely action with one of the Oblique Moods
- 4. **Настоящая любовь** может длиться вечно. *articles with abstract nouns*
- 5. Мне **бы хотелось**, чтобы вы были осторожнее в следующий раз. wish with one of the Oblique Moods
- 6. **Некий Томас Смит** из **Гааги** хочет поговорить с вами. *articles with personal names*
- 7. Линда сразу же **открыла** дверь. Она **ждала** доставку **все утро**. *tenses, two past actions, the second is durable and before the first one*
- 8. Он, **должно быть, не** знает, что все его друзья ушли плавать. *deduction*
- 9. Торт **украсят** так, как вы пожелаете. *promise, the subject is acted upon*
- 10. Врач **настаивал**, чтобы пациент был прооперирован без дальнейших отлагательств.

one of the Oblique Moods that we find after modal meaning

Card 20

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'I *told* you Pyoder was a good fellow! I knew you'd figure it out, eventually! He says you had a lovely, friendly grocery trip together.'

'His name is Pyotr,' Kate said through her teeth. 'I **wish** you (1) <u>learnt</u> to pronounce it right.'

'Maybe after supper you two (2) <u>would like</u> to go to a movie,' her father suggested.

Kate said, (3) 'I'm washing my hair after supper.'

'After supper? You're washing your hair after supper? Why are you doing it then?'

Kate (4) sighed and (4) slung her bucket into the broom closet.

Pyotr said, 'We are wondering if you (5) could explain to us what braising is.'

'I have no idea what braising is,' Kate said. She went to the sink to wash her hands. There were bloody meat wrappers in (6) the sink and a cabbage core, along with several outer leaves. Since her father was fanatic about the clean-as-you-go principle, she knew all too well whom to blame. (7) 'Don't you dare leave the kitchen like this when you're finished,' she told Pyotr as she dried her hands.

'I will take care of everything!' Pyotr said. 'Eddie is staying to dinner?'

'Edward, you mean. No, he's not. 'Eddie'! Good grief!'

(8) '__ Americans love to be called nicknames,' Pyotr said.

Complete the answer:

- 1. **Learnt** is ... in its ... form used in the ... of a ... sentence after **wish** in the ... clause. The ... action is ... or ... **wished**.
 - 2. **Would like** is ... in its ... form. It is used in a ... to ...
 - 3. *Am washing* is ... form used to denote ...
 - 4. **Signed** and **slung** are ... forms used to denote ...
- 5. *Could explain* is a ... which consists of the ... *could* in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... *explain*. Time reference is to the ... or ...
- 6. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... The specification is carried out by means of the ...
- 7. **Don't dare leave** is a ... which consists of the ... **don't dare** in its ... in the meaning of ... and the ... **leave**. Time reference is to the ...
- 8. The ... article is used in its ... function with a/an ... noun in the ... The meaning of the article is ... people of the group.

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Чтобы **бы** вы предложили купить, **если бы** у нас был миллион евро? *unreal actions with one of the Oblique Moods*
- 2. **Жаль**, что вы не настояли на своём варианте. wish with one of the Oblique Moods
- 3. **К концу января** я **сдам** все экзамены. an action completed before a moment in the future
- 4. Пусть никто ничего не говорит.
- a command in a simple sentence with an indefinite pronoun used as a subject
- 5. Благодаря родителям он **получил хорошее образование прежде**, чем **женился**.

tenses, articles with abstract nouns

- 6. Он потребовал, чтобы бедному Джону все рассказали.
- one of the Oblique Moods that we find after modal meaning, articles with personal names
 - 7. Он предупредил нас, что климат в южной части **Канады** холодный. *articles with geographical names*
- 8. Им, **должно быть**, здесь очень понравилось. Они рекомендовали этот отель друзьям.

deduction

- 9. Ты должен был извиниться за то, что нагрубил.
- criticism/advice/recommendation
- 10. Когда он был маленький, папа водил его в кино по субботам. two past actions, the second is a habitual action

Key to Level 2

Card 11

I.

1. ... Subjunctive II ... adverbial ... of comparison ...unreal ... simultaneous with ...

- 2. definite, specifying, countable, plural, limiting
- 3. zero, classifying, countable, plural, descriptive
- 4. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... inability/general possibility ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 5. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... offer/suggestion ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... future.
- 6. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
 - 7. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
 - 8. ... Subjunctive II ... attributive-appositive ... simultaneous with ...

- 1. I wish you had enough experience for this position.
- 2. Can/Could they have broken the window?
- 3. We may/might not have closed the door.
- 4. Hardly had she opened the window when it started raining. OR No sooner had she opened the window than it started raining.
 - 5. It isn't him. He couldn't have done it.
 - 6. We didn't manage to visit Hyde Park.
 - 7. The happy are usually kind.
 - 8. I would rather have never known the truth.
 - 9. It was frosty in the morning and the car wouldn't start.
 - 10. I was swimming in the sea this time yesterday.

Card 12

١.

- 1. The Past Perfect Tense, a past action completed before a moment in the past
 - 2. Subjunctive II non-perfect ... object ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...
- 3. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... obligation coming from external authority ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present.
- 4. ... the Suppositional Mood ... adverbial ... problematic ... problematic ... future.
 - 5. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
 - 6. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting
- 7. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
- 8. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... an unfulfilled obligation/criticism ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.

II.

- 1. Gold was found/has been found in the east of Canada.
- 2. You can't/couldn't have seen him yesterday. He's not in Minsk now.
- 3. He asked if/whether I would come to talk to him.
- 4. Should any difficulty arise, call me immediately. OR If any difficulty should arise, call me immediately.

- 5. Stubbornness is a useful trait.
- 6. I would rather you didn't ask/hadn't asked him about it.
- 7. You should be ashamed of your behaviour.
- 8. He may/might/could have called me yesterday. I turned off the phone and missed all the calls.
 - 9. I left the room quietly while the news was being discussed.
 - 10. You had better go home, have some hot tea and go to bed.

- I.
- 1. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
- 2. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... chances ... perfect (common) infinitive passive ... past.
 - 3. definite, specifying, countable, singular, meaning, unique
- 4. ... Subjunctive II ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...
- 5. The Past Perfect Tense, a past action completed before a moment in the past
- 6. ... the Conditional Mood ... perfect ... simple sentence ... implied condition ... past.
- 7. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... obligation coming from external authority ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 8. the Past Continuous Tense, action in progress at a definite moment in the past
 - II.
 - 1. Queen Elizabeth visited the Olympic Games.
 - 2. I wish he had been with us yesterday.
 - 3. I won't discuss it with us.
 - 4. If I go on holiday I will bring you a souvenir.
 - 5. I had to talk to them.
 - 6. He is so pale as if/as though he had seen a sixth finger on his hand.
 - 7. It was love at first sight.
- 8. When the dishes were washed/had been washed, we went to watch a movie.
 - 9. We may/might/could have taken a hasty decision.
 - 10. Suffice it to say it is the funniest movie I have seen.

Card 14

- ١.
- 1. the Present Perfect Tense, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now
- 2. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... inability/unsuccessful achievement ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.

- 3. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... adverbial clause of comparison ... complex ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...
 - 4. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting
- 5. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... attributive-appositive ... complex ... main ... simultaneous with ...
 - 6. zero, classifying, countable, plural, descriptive
 - 7. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
- 8. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... criticism/an unfulfilled obligation ... perfect (common) infinitive active ... past

- 1. The Roman Empire ceased to exist long ago.
- 2. He woke up and understood it was high time he bought a new alarm.
- 3. You should have explained everything to her. Why didn't you do that?
- 4. I do not approve of your purchase. I would rather have bought a new car.
 - 5. I didn't remember if/whether I had locked the door.
- 6. You needn't have bought so much bread, but it's okay, we'll feed all the birds now.
 - 7. Anger is bad for health and joy is good.
 - 8. As soon as I pass the exams I will go to my grandma to the country.
 - 9. Can/Could they have raised his salary?
 - 10. I wish he could have translated the book on time.

Card 15

Ι.

- 1. ... Subjunctive I ... object clause ... complex ... modal meaning ...
- 2. the Present Continuous Tense, a planned future action
- 3. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Future Simple Tense form ... obligation coming from external authority ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... future.
- 4. ... the Conditional Mood ... non-perfect ... simple sentence ... implied condition ... present ... future.
 - 5. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
 - 6. definite, specifying, countable, plural, context
- 7. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... inability/general possibility ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present.
 - 8. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular

II.

- 1. He would often go to the theatre last year.
- 2. Let's discuss medieval Europe and ancient Rome.
- 3. John insisted that the documents be sent/should be sent immediately.
- 4. I must have lost my earring in the museum yesterday. We didn't go anywhere else.

- 5. I wish their house were nearer.
- 6. He has got a good education.
- 7. He told us that he had been promoted.
- 8. We have been friends with the Smiths since we have been living in this house.
- 9. If he is to pass the exam he had better start revising modal verbs right away.
- 10. If he had taken the medicine on time his throat wouldn't hurt/wouldn't be hurting so much now.

١.

- 1. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... general possibility ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- 2. the Past Simple Passive Tense, a habitual past action, the subject was acted upon
 - 3. zero, classifying, countable, plural, descriptive
- 4. the Present Perfect Tense, a future action in a subordinate clause of time
 - 5. ... Subjunctive I ... object clause ... complex ... modal meaning ...
 - 6. definite, specifying, countable, singular, limiting
- 7. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... advice/recommendation ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present ... future.
- 8. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect continuous ... adverbial ... of comparison ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...

II.

- 1. I don't want to go the Caspian Sea, I want to see the Red Sea.
- 2. They suggested that Jane do/should do the report herself.
- 3. Why is he leaving? He could/might join us now, when the project is being discussed.
 - 4. 'You are to learn all the rules by Friday,' said the teacher.
 - 5. I wish he hadn't bought pears instead of apples.
- 6. If we are to learn to swim we have to go/need to go to the swimming pool.
 - 7. Poor John forgot to send a letter.
- 8. Hardly had the film started when the light went off. OR No sooner had the film started than the light went off.
 - 9. It can't/couldn't be that he didn't buy/hasn't bought those curtains.
 - 10. His demand that he be sent/should be sent the report was forgotten.

Card 17

I.

1. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II ... polite request/annoyance ... non-perfect common infinitive ... posterior to ... object ... complex ... main ...

- 2. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
- 3. indefinite, aspective, uncountable abstract, descriptive, aspect
- 4. zero, generic, uncountable concrete
- 5. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... a habitual action ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
 - 6. ... Subjunctive I ... object clause ... complex ... modal meaning ...
- 7. the Past Perfect Tense, a past action completed before another past action
- 8. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... general possibility ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
- OR ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... unreal (conditional) ability ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present.

- 1. His parents insisted that they be sent/should be sent the reply.
- 2. I wish you were kinder.
- 3. Boys will be boys.
- 4. I went to the Odeon before I drove to Heathrow.
- 5. The love of a mother works wonders.
- 6. We haven't seen him for a whole week. He must have gone on holiday.
- 7. How dare he tease my cat?
- 8. Call me if Jane doesn't offer to give you a lift.
- 9. It's late. Where could she have been all this time?
- 10. If our neighbour should call on us/Should our neighbour call on us give her the recipe of the pie.

Card 18

I.

- 1. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... advice/recommendation ... non-perfect continuous infinitive active ... present ... future.
- 2. the Present Perfect Tense, a state that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still true now
- 3. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... adverbial ... of comparison ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...
- 4. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... simultaneous with ...
 - 5. The Past Simple Tense, a past state at a definite moment in the past
- 6. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Past Simple Tense form ... ability ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... past.
 - 7. definite, specifying, countable, singular, context
 - 8. zero, generic, uncountable abstract

- 1. He told me about the Far East and the Kola Peninsula.
- 2. If he were a patient person he wouldn't have got so angry yesterday.
- 3. It is not the Britain I saw in 1990.
- 4. He said he was tired and that he wouldn't go shopping.
- 5. The toys can't/couldn't have been sold out.
- 6. I baked a cake while the Christmas tree was being decorated.
- 7. We were to have met at five but he didn't come to the meeting.
- 8. I wish he hadn't signed all the postcards yet.
- 9. You shouldn't have been so frank with him.
- 10. And what if the lock should break?

Card 19

I.

- 1. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... negative deduction ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present
 - 2. indefinite, classifying, countable, singular
 - 3. the Present Continuous Tense, an intended future action
- 4. ... the Conditional Mood ... non-perfect ... main ... complex ... to sound polite.
 - 5. the Present Simple Tense, main events in storytelling
 - 6. ... Subjunctive I ... object clause ... complex ... modal meaning ...
 - 7. zero, generic, uncountable concrete
- 8. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Present Simple Tense form ... chances ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... future

II.

- 1. You should have admitted your mistake and apologised.
- 2. I would like to see the Forth Bridge.
- 3. And what if they shouldn't manage to deliver the cellphone on time?
- 4. Real love can last forever.
- 5. I wish you were more careful next time.
- 6. A Thomas Smith from the Hague wants to talk to you.
- 7. Linda immediately opened the door. She had been waiting for the delivery the whole morning.
 - 8. He must be unaware that all his friends have gone swimming.
 - 9. The cake shall be decorated as you wish.
- 10. The doctor insisted that the patient be operated on/should be operated on without further delay.

Card 20

I.

1. ... Subjunctive II ... non-perfect ... object ... complex ... main ... unreal ... simultaneous with ... posterior to ...

- 2. ... the Conditional Mood ... non-perfect ... main ... simple sentence ... sound polite.
 - 3. the Present Continuous Tense, a planned future action
 - 4. the Past Simple Tense, a succession of single past events
- 5. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... modal verb ... Subjunctive II form ... polite request ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... present ... future.
 - 6. definite, specifying, countable, singular, context
- 7. ... compound verbal modal predicate ... ordinary verb ... Imperative Mood form ... lack of courage ... non-perfect (common) infinitive active ... future.
 - 8. zero, generic, countable, plural, all

- 1. What would you suggest we buy/should buy if we had a billion dollars?
- 2. I wish you had insisted on your variant.
- 3. I will/shall have passed all the exams by the end of January.
- 4. No one say a word!
- 5. Thanks to his parents he had got a good education before he got married.
 - 6. He demanded that poor John be told/should be told everything.
 - 7. He warned us that the climate in the southern part of Canada is cold.
- 8. They must have liked it here. They (have) recommended the hotel to their friends.
 - 9. You should have apologised for being rude.
- 10. When he was a little boy, his father would take him to the cinema on Sundays.

LEVEL 3

Card 21

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

She felt **as if** there (1) <u>were</u> a spy in the firm.

She looked around with as much menace as possible, then continued, 'This system is self-contained and (2) <u>cannot be accessed</u> anywhere else within the firm, or outside the firm. It's online, you just can't get to it. This is the only place, (3) <u>the</u> **only** room in which you are able to access the documents, and this room is closed from 10:00 p.m. until 6:00 a.m. Sorry, no all-nighters in here, but it is open **seven days** (4) a **week**.'

At her direction, each associate sat down before a computer and (5) <u>was given</u> a pass code and password.

Sherry walked from lawyer to lawyer, looking at the monitors and chatting like a college professor. 'There's an extensive tutorial at the beginning, and I strongly **suggest** you (6) <u>go</u> through it today. Pull up the index. The documents are classified in three basic groups, with a hundred subgroups. Any questions?'

All eight associates stared at their monitors, all thinking the same thing – there are four million documents in there, and someone (7) has to examine them.

'Sonic is amazing,' Sherry said. 'Once you (8) <u>master</u> it, you will be able to find a document or group of documents within seconds.'

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... in the meaning of ... It is followed by a ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... in the meaning of ... It is followed by a ... Time reference is to the ...
- 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
- 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
- 9. The second tense form is ... and used to denote ...
- 10. The function (3) the is ..., the function (4) a is ...
- 11. (3) the is used with ...
- 12. (4) <u>a</u> is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Он **зна**л, что ему **не надо** никому ничего объяснять.
- 2. Он рассказал о поездке в Баварию и в Альпы.
- 3. Его интересовало, будут ли приняты какие-либо меры.
- 4. Пожалуй, ты выглядишь усталым. Тебе следует больше отдыхать.
- 5. Совет был очень разумным, и **молодой Джон** принял его **с благо- дарностью**.
 - 6. Будь что будет, я куплю этот старый дом.
 - 7. Должно быть, он никогда не узнал правду.
- 8. **Если бы** он лучше знал английский, он **бы** посмотрел вчера фильм с субтитрами.
 - 9. Его рана никак не заживала.
 - 10. Жаль, что она уже рассказала тебе финал истории.

Card 22

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

When a little child (1) is learning to walk or talk, we encourage and praise him for every tiny improvement he makes.

Many actresses and actors feel they (2) <u>must be</u> performance perfect when they arrive at the first rehearsal.

I remind them that the purpose of rehearsal is to learn. Rehearsal is a period of time to make mistakes, which exists **so that** they (3) <u>should try</u> new ways and learn.

Only by practising over and over do we learn (4) <u>the</u> new and make it a natural part of us. When you watch an accomplished professional in any field, you are looking at innumerable hours of practice.

Don't do what I used to do – I (5) <u>would refuse</u> to try anything new because I didn't know how to do it, and I **wished** I (6) <u>didn't look</u> foolish.

Learning is making mistakes until our subconscious mind can put together (7) the **right** pictures.

It doesn't matter how long you (8) <u>have been thinking</u> of yourself as a failure; you can begin to create a 'success' pattern now.

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (4) the is ..., the function (7) the is ...
 - 11. (4) the is used with ...
 - 12. (7) the is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Если человек будет работать под давлением, он не будет любить свою работу.
 - 2. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты поменьше курил.
 - 3. Должно быть, он не заметил, как она вышла из зала.
 - 4. Скульптура Древнего Рима всегда восхищала его.
 - 5. Сейчас накрывают на стол. Вас обслужат через несколько минут.
 - 6. Неужели мы пропустили свою остановку?
 - 7. Он купил жене Гогена (картину) и Моне (картина).
 - 8. Странно, что они не пришли на встречу.
 - 9. Откуда мне знать?
- 10. Если **вдруг** мы поссоримся, **напомни** мне, что мы обещали не ссориться.

Card 23

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'If you (1) <u>are suggesting</u> that Mr Croom was trying to force me to propose that we should spend (2) <u>the</u> night in the car, you are wholly wrong; and it's (3) <u>a</u> base suggestion.'

'What (4) <u>made</u> you think I was going to make that suggestion, Lady Corven? Had the idea been present to your mind?'

'No. When I **suggested** that we (5) <u>should spend</u> the night in the car, Mr Croom was taken aback.'

'Oh! How did he show that?'

'He asked me if I (6) <u>could trust</u> him. I (7) <u>had to tell</u> him not to be old-fashioned. Of course, I could trust him.'

'I wished I (8) hadn't said that. It wasn't fair to him.'

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (2) the is ..., the function (3) a is ...
 - 11. (2) the is used with ... Peculiarities: ...
 - 12. (3) <u>a</u> is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Он сказал, что позвонит мне, как только перевод будет закончен.
- 2. Тебе **следовало бы** надеть резиновые сапоги в такую дождливую погоду.
 - 3. **Неужели** он сказал это? Он, **должно быть**, был очень сердит на вас.
 - 4. Если ты вдруг забудешь мой адрес, позвони мне.
 - 5. Новости, которые обсуждают сейчас, очень тревожат меня.
 - 6. Жаль, что я не сказала правды.
- 7. 16 апреля 1912 года «**Титаник**», британский пароход, затонул в **Атлантическом океане** после столкновения с айсбергом.
 - 8. Он уже 40 лет коллекционирует старую мебель.
 - 9. **Должно быть**, ты шутишь.
 - 10. Я бы предпочла, чтобы он чинил телефоны.

Card 24

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'If there are creatures who eat (1) __ sadness,' Jeannie mused, 'a graveyard would make a nice cafeteria, wouldn't it?'

Ralph **wished** mightily that his wife (2) <u>hadn't come</u>. If not for her, he (3) <u>would have been</u> out the door ten minutes ago. Yes, the barn where the clothes (4) <u>had been found</u> was near that dusty old boneyard. Yes, the goo that had turned the hay black was puzzling, and yes, perhaps there had been an outsider. That was a theory he was willing to accept, at least for the time being. It explained a lot. An outsider who (5) <u>was</u> consciously <u>re-creating</u> a Mexican legend would explain even more... but it didn't explain the disappearing man at the courthouse, or how Terry Maitland (6) <u>could have been</u> in two places at the same time. He kept coming up against those things; they were like pebbles lodged in his throat.

Holly said, 'Let me show you some pictures I took at another graveyard. They (7) <u>may open</u> a line of more normal investigation. If either Detective Anderson or Lieutenant Sablo is willing to talk to the police in Montgomery County, Ohio, that is.'

Yune said, 'At this point I'd talk to (8) the pope, if it helped to clear this up.'

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (1) __ is ..., the function (8) the is ...
 - 11. (1) __ is used with ...
 - 12. (8) the is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Я хочу увидеть Уэстминистерское аббатство и Лондонский мост.
- 2. Я боюсь, как бы он не потерял их адрес.
- 3. Он наверняка ей все расскажет.
- 4. Определенный артикль может использоваться в двух функциях.
- 5. Я бы предпочел, чтобы они отправили все письма вчера.
- 6. **Когда** я **откры**л пакет, я **увидел**, что в нем **лежат** апельсины и яблоки.
- 7. **Завтра в 5** я **буду сдавать** экзамен. А я уже **сдам** экзамен **к этому времени**.
 - 8. Он мог бы расплатиться карточкой, но предпочел наличные.

- 9. Он отказывается делиться своими вещами.
- 10. Если вдруг отключат электричество, включай генератор.

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'I (1) <u>see</u>. Then I'm afraid there's nothing for it but to wait. These things generally disentangle themselves. (2) __ Catholics (3) <u>are not to believe</u> in divorce. But if you feel this is a case for one-'

'Clare's only twenty-four. She can't live alone the rest of her life.'

'(4) Were you thinking of doing that?'

'I! That's different.'

'Yes, you're very unlike, but to have you wasted would be far worse. Just as much worse as wasting (5) \underline{a} lovely day in winter is than wasting one in summer.'

'The curtain's going up.'...

'I wonder,' muttered Clare: 'It didn't look to me as if their love would have lasted long.

'I wish (6) we'd gone to a movie, I (7) could have held your hand.'

'Dornford's looking at Dinny **as if** she (8) <u>were</u> the Madonna of the future that he wanted to make a Madonna of the past.'

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (2) $\underline{}$ is ..., the function (5) $\underline{}$ is ...
 - 11. (2) __ is used with ...
 - 12. (5) the is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Он, должно быть, никогда не видел двухэтажного автобуса.
- 2. Едва открылась дверь, как дети перестали смеяться.
- 3. Ах, если бы я могла позволить себе поездку на Кипр!
- 4. **Случись так, что** это кольцо **будет** уже **продано**, я **куплю** браслет, который ей так **понравился** на прошлой неделе.

- 5. Настала ночь. На небе светила серебристая луна.
- 6. Когда ты напишешь приглашение, я его подпишу.
- 7. Он **чуть не** выронил покупки.
- 8. Я не могу не беспокоиться о будущем моих детей.
- 9. Мост «Золотые ворота» расположен в Сан-Франциско.
- 10. Он взглянул на часы и понял, что ему давно пора идти домой.

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

She gave a long, whooping, rattling gasp. Fred grabbed her, but she was too heavy, and slithered through his arms. Before she went down on her side, Fred saw that (1) the colour (2) was already fading from her cheeks.

'But we're getting you on (3) \underline{a} diet, my dear, and your birthday present is going to be one of those wristbands that measure your –'

'(4) You'<u>ll have to clean up</u> the living room again,' she said. 'I'm sorry. Fred, I'm so, so sorry.'

Before Fred (5) <u>could tell</u> her again to stop talking, to just lie still until she felt better, Arlene drew another of those great, rattling breaths.

'Dad? They're on their way. Is she all right?'

Fred didn't reply. He was too busy applying more half-assed CPR and **wishing** he (6) <u>had taken</u> a class – why (7) <u>had</u> he never <u>found</u> time to do that? There were so many things he wished for. He (8) <u>would have traded</u> his immortal soul to be able to turn the calendar back one lousy week.

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (1) the is ..., the function (3) \underline{a} is ...
 - 11. (1) the is used with ... Peculiarities: ...
 - 12. (3) <u>a</u> is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

1. Жаль, что все синие джинсы уже распроданы.

- 2. **Не может быть**, чтобы он забыл взять с собой теплые вещи!
- 3. С тех пор как я его знаю, он всегда завтракает в этом кафе.
- 4. **Если бы** мы полетели самолетом, мы **бы** потратили гораздо меньше времени на дорогу.
 - 5. Я видел в их глазах настоящее счастье.
 - 6. Я бы предпочёл путешествовать на машине.
 - 7. Здоровые должны заботиться о заболевших.
 - 8. Шторы постираны, окна помыты, пора нам отдохнуть!
 - 9. В этом доме, **очевидно**, уже давно никто не живет.
 - 10. Мы не осмелились открыть ящик.

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

At 1:00 a.m., he stuffed his notebooks into his backpack and for a few seconds went through (1) the fruitless ritual **of** straightening his desk. He looked around, turned off the light, locked his door, and again realized that any decent operative (2) could intrude whenever he wanted. He felt certain Bennie and his thugs had been there, probably with bugs and wires and mikes and other crap that Kyle tried not to think about.

They (3) <u>must have been watching</u>. In spite of his **demands** that Bennie (4) <u>leave</u> him alone, Kyle knew they were following him. (5) He'<u>d seen</u> them several times. They were good, but they had made a few mistakes. The challenge, he told himself repeatedly, was to act **as though** he (6) <u>had</u> no clue that they were watching. Just play the role of (7) <u>a</u> naive, unconcerned college kid hauling a backpack around campus and looking at girls. He never (8) <u>changed</u> his routines, or his routes, or parking lots.

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (1) the is ..., the function (7) a is ...
 - 11. (1) the is used with ...
 - 12. (7) <u>a</u> is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Как давно ты живёшь по этому адресу?
- 2. Он сказал, что всё будет сделано вовремя.
- 3. Их самолёт, возможно, уже приземлился.
- 4. Я мог бы одолжить тебе денег. Почему ты не попросил у меня?
- 5. Важно, чтобы каждый родитель понимал, что тревожит его детей.
- 6. Он должен был полететь самолётом, но рейс отменили.
- 7. После университета он преподавал в хорошей школе на юге **Шотландии**.
 - 8. Жаль, что у него нет машины.
 - 9. Гаага находится в Нидерландах.
- 10. Даже если он вдруг захочет помочь тебе, он не сможет этого сделать.

Card 28

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'I didn't really mean it. How (1) <u>could</u> you <u>think</u> I meant it? It's just that you hurt my feelings. You talked like we'd never had a happy moment together. You can see why I would react that way.'

There was something patient and forbearing about the way he stood listening to her, not responding, the jingling of his keys finally stilled. It (2) <u>gave</u> her a sense of defeat. She felt (3) __ tears spring to her eyes, and she said, 'We've been married thirty years, Michael. (4) We'<u>ve been</u> through so much together! You can't just toss that away because of one little thing I said!'

'It wasn't what you said,' he told her. 'It was how I felt when you said it.'

'When you said 'Go,' I felt... freed,' he said. 'I thought, Why, yes, I could go, couldn't I? There's an idea! It came to me like the lifting of a burden.'

'A burden,' she said.

'Well, I (5) <u>would</u> certainly <u>not want</u> to be a *burden*,' Pauline said, treading hard on (6) <u>the</u> **last** word.

Now he looked at her.

'Heaven (7) <u>forbid</u> you should feel any sense of ___ responsibility, or duty, or obligation. No, definitely you (8) <u>should go</u>, Michael. I wouldn't dream of holding you back. Go! Go! Go!

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number \dots and \dots
 - (1) and (8)
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the \dots form in the meaning of \dots It is followed by \dots Time reference is to the \dots

- 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
- 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
- 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
- 10. The function (3) __ is ..., the function (6) the is ...
- 11. (3) __ is used with ...
- 12. (6) the is used with ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. Жаль, что он не справился с заданием вовремя.
- 2. Он **всегда мечтал** посетил **Лувр**, а ей **хотелось** попасть в **Британский музей**.
 - 3. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты перестал критиковать все, что я делаю.
 - 4. Когда я позвонил ему вчера, он мыл посуду и не ответил.
 - 5. Средиземное море красиво в любую погоду.
 - 6. Ты мог бы оставить ключи на столе!
 - 7. Погода прекрасная. Пусть кто-нибудь откроет окно!
 - 8. Сколько всего книг ты прочитал?
 - 9. Как он смеет смеяться над ее акцентом!
 - 10. Он должен был пойти к стоматологу в 5, но стоматолог заболел.

Card 29

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

'Keep an eye on the thermometer. I'd say anytime it falls into the teens, you (1) <u>ought to leave</u> that tap on.'

'Would you like some coffee, Michael? I've just made up (2) <u>a</u> fresh pot. (3) I've decided (4) I'm skipping church today.'

'Oh!' He fumbled his jacket cuff away from his watch. 'No, thanks. (5) I'd better be going,' he told her. He walked back to the carport and set (6) the shovel in the corner. Other tools were clumped there in a tangle and he realigned them against the side of the house before he returned to the driveway. 'I (7) have to collect Pagan,' he said.

He was walking toward the curb now, with Pauline close behind. When he reached his car he turned, and she stopped and looked up at him, hugging herself against the cold. 'Thank you, Michael, for coming,' she said. 'I don't know how I (8) would cope **if** I had to handle all this myself – the snow, the pipes...'

- 1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...
- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number ... and ...
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...

- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (2) a is ..., the function (6) the is ...
 - 11. (2) a is used with ...
 - 12. (6) the is used with ... Peculiarities: ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. **Берингов пролив** соединяет **Северный Ледовитый** и **Тихий океаны**.
 - 2. **Мне бы хотелось**, чтобы она не верила в привидения.
 - 3. Как только мы получим контракт, мы сразу приступим к работе.
 - 4. Должно быть, он застрял в лифте.
 - 5. Если бы я умел плавать, я бы вчера сходил в аквапарк.
 - 6. Он отказывался принимать их условия.
 - 7. Дорогой Джон попросил заказать пиццу.
 - 8. Эту посылку уже полчаса упаковывают.
 - 9. Они не знали, что им не суждено было больше встретиться.
 - 10. Крайне важно, чтобы каждый студент отвечал честно.

Card 30

I. Comment on the underlined phenomena.

It was **as if** Socks [the dog] (1) <u>were drowning</u> and Michael were (2) <u>the</u> **only** lifeguard for miles. He (3) <u>launched</u> himself at Michael, leaping right off the ground and catching his shoulders with his huge paws.

Michael was left with nowhere to go. He stood enfolded in soggy dog while Socks licked and whined and wriggled out his loneliness and frustration at being abandoned.

There was (4) \underline{a} stunned silence from Shelby and Garrett, and there was not a lot Michael (5) $\underline{could \ say}$, either.

'Hey, it's a family reunion.' Lana entered, dumped the clothes on a chair, then looked at Michael. Her face cleared. 'So that's where he is.'

'Where did you think Mike would be?'

'I meant Socks,' Lana said cheerfully. 'I (6) $\underline{\text{might have known}}$ he'd get himself here.'

'(7) <u>Have</u> you <u>been looking</u> for him?' Garrett queried, and Lana gave him a grin that matched Shelby's.

'There were five messages on our phone when Dylan and I got home,' she said. 'Five! All complaining about Socks and **demanding** that someone in the family (8) <u>do</u> something.'

1. You comment on the Oblique Moods in number ... and ...

- 2. The first Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ... Time reference: ...
- 3. The second Oblique Mood form is ... It is used in ...
- 4. You comment on compound verbal modal predicates in number \dots and \dots
- 5. The first modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
- 6. The second modal verb is used in the ... form in the meaning of ... It is followed by ... Time reference is to the ...
 - 7. You comment on tenses in number ... and ...
 - 8. The first tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 9. The second tense form is ... and is used to denote ...
 - 10. The function (2) the is ..., the function (4) a is ...
 - 11. (2) the is used with ...
 - 12. (4) a is used with ... Peculiarities: ...

II. Translate into English using your active Grammar.

- 1. С какой стати мне обсуждать это с вами?
- 2. Чтобы **бы** вы сказали, **если бы** я предложил сходить поужинать в кафе сегодня?
 - 3. Неужели он выбросил все их фотографии?
 - 4. Честный Ричард не смог солгать.
 - 5. Он всегда мечтал стать художником.
 - 6. Он бежал уже 15 минут, когда начался дождь.
 - 7. Я боюсь, как бы они не отправили ему результаты моих анализов.
 - 8. Я уверен, что когда мы приедем домой, они уже приготовят ужин.
- 9. **Достаточно сказать**, что он самый терпеливый человек из всех, кого я когда-либо **встречал**.
 - 10. Он должен был сдать отчет в пятницу, но заболел.

Key to Level 3

Card 21

- I.
- 1. (1) and (6)
- 2. Subjunctive II non-perfect, predicative clause after **as if**, simultaneous with **was**
 - 3. Subjunctive I, object clause after modal meaning
 - 4. (2) and (7)
- 5. Present Simple Tense form, general possibility, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
- 6. Present Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
 - 7. (5) and (8)

- 8. the Past Simple Passive, a single past event, the subject was acted upon
 - 9. the Present Simple, a future action in a subordinate clause of time
 - 10. specifying, numerical
 - 11. a countable singular noun modified by a limiting attribute
 - 12. a countable singular noun denoting time

- 1. He knew that he didn't have to explain anything to anyone.
- 2. He told us about his trip to **Bavaria** and **the Alps**.
- 3. He wondered if/whether any measures would be taken.
- 4. I dare say you look tired. You should have more rest.
- 5. The advice was wise and young John took it with gratitude.
- 6. Come what may, I'll buy this old house.
- 7. He mast have never known the truth.
- 8. If he knew English/the English language better he would have watched a film with subtitles yesterday.
 - 9. His wound wouldn't heel.
 - 10. I wish she hadn't told you the end of the story.

Card 22

- ١.
- 1. (3) and (6)
- 2. the Suppositional Mood non-perfect, adverbial clause of purpose after **so that**, posterior to **exists**
- 3. Subjunctive II non-perfect, object clause after **wished**, simultaneous with **wished**
 - 4. (2) and (5)
 - 5. strong obligation, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
- 6. Past Simple Tense form, a habitual action, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 7. (1) and (8)
 - 8. the Present Continuous, a routine action in progress
- 9. the Present Perfect Continuous, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now
 - 10. generic, specifying
 - 11. a substantivized adjective which denotes an abstract notion
 - 12. a countable plural noun modified by a limiting attribute

II.

- 1. If a person works under pressure he will not love his job.
- 2. I wish you smoked/would smoke less.
- 3. He must have failed to notice how she left the room.
- 4. He has always been fascinated by the sculpture of ancient Rome.

- 5. The table is being laid. You will be served in a minute.
- 6. Can/Could we have missed our stop?
- 7. He (has) bought his wife a Gauguin and a Monet.
- 8. It is strange that they shouldn't have come to the meeting.
- 9. How should I know?
- 10. Should we have a quarrel/if we should have a quarrel, remind me that we promised not to quarrel.

Card 23

- I.
- 1. (5) and (8)
- 2. the Suppositional Mood non-perfect, object clause after modal meaning, posterior to **suggested**
 - 3. Subjunctive II perfect, object clause after wished, prior to wished
 - 4. (6) and (7)
- 5. Past Simple Tense form, general possibility/ability, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 6. Past Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 7. (1) and (4)
- 8. the Present Continuous, an action in progress happening at the moment of speaking
 - 9. The Past Simple, a single past event
 - 10. specifying, classifying
- 11. a countable singular noun, the specification is carried out by means of the context
 - 12. a countable singular noun modified by a descriptive attribute

II.

- 1. He said that he would call me as soon as the translation was finished.
- 2. You should put on/have put on rubber boots in such rainy weather.
- 3. Can/Could he have said it? He must have been really angry with you.
- 4. Should you forget/If you should forget my address, call me.
- 5. The news which **is being discussed** now is very disturbing. BETTER: I find the news which **is being discussed** now very disturbing.
 - 6. I wish I had told the truth.
- 7. On the 16th of April in 1912 **the Titanic**, a British steamer, sank in **the Atlantic Ocean** after hitting an iceberg.
 - 8. He has been collecting old furniture for 40 years already.
 - 9. You've got to be kidding.
 - 10. I would rather he repaired/were repairing cell phones.

Card 24

- I.
- 1. (2) and (3)

- 2. Subjunctive II perfect, object clause after wished, prior to wished
- 3. the Conditional Mood perfect, simple sentence with implied condition, prior to the moment of speaking
 - 4. (6) and (7)
- 5. Subjunctive II form, unreal (conditional) possibility, perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 6. Present Simple Tense form, chances, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, future
 - 7. (4) and (5)
- 8. the Past Perfect passive, a past action completed before a moment in the past, the subject was acted upon
- 9. the Past Continuous, an action in progress during a definite period of time in the past
 - 10. generic, specifying
 - 11. an uncountable abstract noun
 - 12. a countable singular noun which denotes a unique person

- 1. I want to see Westminster Abbey and London bridge.
- 2. I fear lest he should lose/lose their address.
- 3. He is sure/is bound to tell her everything.
- 4. The definite article can be used in two functions.
- 5. I would rather they had sent all the letters yesterday.
- 6. When I opened the pack I saw that there were oranges and apples in it.
- 7. I will be taking my exam at 5 tomorrow. And I will have passed mine by then.
 - 8. He could have paid by card but he preferred to pay (in) cash.
 - 9. He won't share his belongings.
- 10. If the electricity should be cut off/Should the electricity be cut off, turn the generator on.

Card 25

١.

- 1. *(6)* and *(8)*
- 2. Subjunctive II perfect, object clause after wish, prior to wish
- 3. Subjunctive II non-perfect, adverbial clause of comparison after **as if**, simultaneous with **is looking**
 - 4. (3) and (7)
- 5. Present Simple Tense form, a plan, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present
- 6. Subjunctive II form, unreal (conditional) possibility, perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 7. (1) and (4)
- 8. the Present Simple, a present action taking place at the moment of speaking (a stative verb)
- 9. the Past Continuous, an action in progress during a definite period of time in the past
 - 10. classifying, classifying

- 11. a countable plural noun (the meaning is 'Catholics, not atheists')
- 12. a countable singular noun modified by a descriptive attribute

- 1. He **must have** never **seen** a double-decker.
- 2. Hardly had the door opened when the kids stopped laughing./No sooner had the door opened than the kids stopped laughing.
 - 3. If only I could afford a trip to Cyprus!
- 4. Should the ring be sold/If the ring should be sold, I shall/will buy the bracelet she liked so much last week.
 - 5. Night came. A silver moon was shining in the sky.
 - 6. When you write an invitation, I shall/will sign it.
 - 7. He might/could have dropped his purchases.
 - 8. I can't help worrying about my children's future.
 - 9. The Golden Gate Bridge is in San-Francisco.
 - 10. He checked his watch and realized it was high time he went home.

Card 26

١.

- 1. (6) and (8)
- 2. Subjunctive II perfect, object clause after wishing, prior to was
- 3. the Conditional Mood perfect, simple sentence with implied condition, prior to the moment of speaking
 - 4. (4) and (5)
- 5. Future Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, future
- 6. Past Simple Tense form, ability, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 7. (2) and (7)
- 8. the Past Continuous, an action in progress during a definite period of time in the past
 - 9. the Past Perfect, a past action completed before a moment in the past
 - 10. specifying, classifying
- 11. a countable singular noun, the specification is carried out by means of the context
 - 12. a countable singular noun

II.

- 1. I wish there were blue jeans on sale.
- 2. He can't/couldn't have forgotten to take warm clothes with him.
- 3. Since I have known him he has always had breakfast in this café.
- 4. If we had gone by air, we would have spent much less time on the travel.
 - 5. I saw **real happiness** in their eyes.
 - 6. I would rather travel/would rather have travelled by car.
 - 7. The healthy must/should take care of the sick.

- 8. The curtains have been washed, the windows have been cleaned, it's high time we had some rest.
 - 9. Nobody must have lived in this house for a long time already.
 - 10. We didn't dare (to) open the box.

Card 27

- ١.
- 1. (4) and (6)
- 2. Subjunctive I, object clause after modal meaning
- 3. Subjunctive II non-perfect, adverbial clause of comparison after **as though**, simultaneous with **was**
 - 4. (2) and (3)
- 5. Past Simple Tense form, ability, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- **OR** Subjunctive II form, unreal (conditional) possibility, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, simultaneous with **realized**
 - 6. deduction, perfect continuous infinitive active, past
 - 7. (5) and (8)
 - 8. the Past Perfect, past actions completed before a moment in the past
 - 9. the Past Simple, habitual past actions
 - 10. specifying, classifying
 - 11. a countable singular noun modified by a limiting of-phrase
 - 12. a countable singular noun modified by descriptive attributes

II.

- 1. How long have you been living at this address?
- 2. He said that everything would be done on time.
- 3. Their plane may/might/could have landed already.
- 4. I could have lent you some money. Why didn't you ask?
- 5. It is **important** that every parent **understand/should understand** what is bothering their kids.
 - 6. He was to have gone by air, but his flight was cancelled.
 - 7. After university he taught in a good school in the south of **Scotland**.
 - 8. I wish he had a car.
 - 9. The Hague is in the Netherlands.
 - 10. Even if he should be eager to help you, he won't be able to do it.

Card 28

- Ι.
- 1. (5) and (7)
- 2. the Conditional Mood non-perfect, simple sentence with implied condition, simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking
 - 3. Subjunctive I, main clause, formulaic expression of wish
 - 4. (1) and (8)
- 5. Subjunctive II form, emotional colouring, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present

- **OR** Past Simple Tense form, ability, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- 6. Advice/recommendation, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present or future
 - 7. (2) and (4)
 - 8. the Past Simple, a single past event
- 9. the Present Perfect, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now
 - 10. classifying, specifying
 - 11. a countable plural noun
 - 12. a countable singular noun modified by a limiting attribute

- 1. I wish he had finished the task on time.
- 2. He has always dreamt of visiting the Louvre and she has always wanted to visit the British Museum.
 - 3. I wish you would stop/you stopped criticising everything I do.
- 4. When I called him yesterday, he was washing the dishes and didn't answer.
 - 5. The Mediterranean (Sea) is beautiful in any weather.
 - 6. You might/could have left the keys on the desk!
 - 7. The weather is splendid. Somebody open the window!
 - 8. How many books have you read?
 - 9. How dare he laugh at her accent!
 - 10. He was to have had an appointment at 5, but the dentist fell ill.

Card 29

I.

- 1. (5) and (8)
- 2. Had better in Subjunctive II followed by a non-perfect continuous infinitive active, simple sentence, posterior to the moment of speaking
- 3. the Conditional Mood non-perfect, main clause of a complex sentence with an adverbial clause of unreal condition, simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking
 - 4. (1) and (7)
- 5. Advice/recommendation, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present or future
- 6. Présent Simple Tense form, obligation coming from external authority, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, present or future
 - 7. (3) and (4)
- 8. the Present Perfect, an action completed in the past but connected in its result with the present
 - 9. the Present Continuous, a planned future action
 - 10. classifying, specifying
 - 11. a countable singular noun modified by a descriptive attribute
- 12. a countable singular noun, the specification is carried out by means of the context.

- 1. The Bering Strait connects the Arctic Ocean with the Pacific Ocean.
- 2. I wish she didn't believe in ghosts.
- 3. As soon as we get the contract we shall/will get down to work.
- 4. He must have got caught in the lift.
- 5. If I could swim, I would have gone to the aquapark yesterday.
- 6. He wouldn't accept their terms.
- 7. **Dear John** asked to order a pizza.
- 8. This parcel has been packed for half an hour already.
- 9. They didn't know that they were not to meet again.
- 10. It is of **vital importance** that every student **answer/should answer** honestly.

Card 30

I.

- 1. (1) and (8)
- 2. Subjunctive II non-perfect continuous, predicative clause after **as if**, simultaneous with **was**, the action is durable
 - 3. Subjunctive I, object clause after modal meaning
 - 4. (5) and (6)
- 5. Past Simple Tense form, ability/general possibility, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, past
- **OR** Subjunctive II form, unreal (conditional) ability, non-perfect (common) infinitive active, simultaneous with **was**
 - 6. Subjunctive II form, criticism, perfect (common) infinitive active, past
 - 7. (3) and (7)
 - 8. The Past Simple, a single past event
- 9. The Present Perfect Continuous, an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and has just stopped with visible present results
 - 10. specifying, aspective
 - 11. a countable singular noun modified by a limiting attribute
- 12. an uncountable abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute, a certain aspect is meant

II.

- 1. Why should I discuss it with you?
- 2. What would you say if I offered to dine out tonight?
- 3. Can/Could he have thrown away all their photos?
- 4. Honest Richard couldn't lie/wasn't able to lie.
- 5. He has always dreamt of becoming an artist.
- 6. He had been running for 15 minutes when it started raining.
- 7. I fear lest they should send/send him the results of my tests.
- 8. I am sure that when we come home, they will have cooked dinner.
- 9. Suffice it to say he is the most patient person of all I have ever met.
- 10. He was to have submitted his report on Friday but he fell ill.

REFERENCES

- 1. Alexander, LG. Longman English Grammar / LG Alexander. Pearson Education Limited, 2003. 351 p.
- 2. Claire, E. Three Little Words: A, an and The: A Foreign Student's Guide to English Articles / E. Claire. Delta Systems Company, Incorporated, 1998. 60 p.
- 3. *Dooley*, *J*. Grammarway 4 with answers / J. Dooley, V. Evans. Berkshire: Express Publishing, 1999. 278 p.
- 4. Downing, A. A University Course in English Grammar / A. Downing, Ph. Locke. Englewood: Prentice Hall, 2006. 610 p.
- 5. *Eastwood*, *J.* Oxford Practice Grammar / J. Eastwood. Oxford: Oxford Univ. Press, 2002 425 p.
- 6. Evans, V. Round-up 6: English Grammar Book / V. Evans, J. Dooley. Pearson Longman, 2003. 260 p.
- 7. Foley, M. MyGrammarLab. Advanced C1-C2 / M. Foley, D. Hall. Pearson Education Limited, 2012. 411 p.
- 8. Foley, M. MyGrammarLab. Intermediate B1-B2 / M. Foley, D. Hall. Pearson Education Limited, 2012. 373 p.
- 9. Fuchs, M. Focus on Grammar 4: An Integrated Skills Approach / M. Fuchs, M. Bonner. Longman: Pearson Longman, 2005. 467 p.
- 10. Larsen-Freeman, D. The Grammar Book / D. Larsen-Freeman. National Geographic Learning: HEINLE CENGAGE learning, 2016. 911 p.
- 11. Side, R. Grammar an Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency with key / R. Side, G. Wellman. Longman, 1999. 286 p.
- 12. Side, R. Grammar and Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency / R. Side. Longman: Pearson Education Limited, 2011. 288 p.
- 13. Swan, M. The Good Grammar Book / M. Swan. Oxford: Oxford Univ. Press, 2003 317 p.
- 14. Thomson, A. J. A Practical English Grammar / A. J. Thomson. Oxford: Oxford Univ. Press, 2010 383 p.
- 15. Vince, M. Advanced Language Practice: with key. English Grammar and Vocabulary / M. Vince, P. Sunderland. Oxford: Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2003. 326 p.
- 16. Vince, M. Macmillan English Grammar in Context / M. Vince. Oxford: Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2007. 232 p.
- 17. Walker, E. Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students / E. Walker. Longman: Pearson Education Limited, 2000. 204 p.

Учебное издание

Аношина Ольга Владимировна

ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА: ИНТЕНСИВНЫЙ КУРС ПОДГОТОВКИ К ЭКЗАМЕНУ

Пособие

Ответственный за выпуск О. В. Аношина

Редактор *Ю. И. Варакса* Компьютерная верстка *Н. А. Шауло*

Подписано в печать 27.04.2023. Формат $60\times84^{-1}/_{16}$. Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура ПТ Астра Санс, ПТ Астра Сериф. Ризография, цифровая печать. Усл. печ. л. 9,07. Уч.-изд. л. 7,70. Тираж 110 экз. Заказ 20.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение: учреждение образования «Минский государственный лингвистический университет». Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя, распространителя печатных изданий от 02.06.2017 г. № 3/1499. ЛП № 02330/458 от 10.07.2020 г.

Адрес: ул. Захарова, 21, 220034, г. Минск.